8051 v7.2

Cross-Assembler,
Linker, Utilities
User’s Manual

FILE* sfile;
int count = 0;

sfile = fopen(file);

if( sfile == NULL )
{
    return -1;
}

while(1)
{
    char c;
    c = fgetc(sfile);
    if(c == EOF)
    {
        break;
    }
    else
    {
    }
}

return 0;
The information in this document has been carefully reviewed and is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, Altium assumes no liabilities for inaccuracies in this document. Furthermore, the delivery of this information does not convey to the recipient any license to use or copy the software or documentation, except as provided in an executed license agreement covering the software and documentation.

Altium reserves the right to change specifications embodied in this document without prior notice.
TABLE OF CONTENTS
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.5.8.2 IFDEF/IFNDEF Function</td>
<td>2–46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.8.3 WHILE Function</td>
<td>2–47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.8.4 REPEAT Function</td>
<td>2–48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.8.5 EXIT Function</td>
<td>2–49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.9 String Manipulation Functions</td>
<td>2–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.9.1 LEN Function</td>
<td>2–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.9.2 SUBSTR Function</td>
<td>2–51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.9.3 MATCH Function</td>
<td>2–52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.10 Message Functions</td>
<td>2–53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.11 File/Line Info Functions</td>
<td>2–54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.12 OPTION Function</td>
<td>2–54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.13 Console I/O Functions</td>
<td>2–55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6 Advanced mpp51 Concepts</td>
<td>2–56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.1 Macro Delimiters</td>
<td>2–56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.1.1 Implied Blank Delimiters</td>
<td>2–56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.1.2 Identifier Delimiters</td>
<td>2–57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.1.3 Literal Delimiters</td>
<td>2–58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.2 Literal vs. Normal Mode</td>
<td>2–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.3 Algorithm for Evaluating Macro Calls</td>
<td>2–62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## ASSEMBLER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Description</td>
<td>3–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Invocation</td>
<td>3–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Asm51 Options</td>
<td>3–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 Segments and Memory Allocation</td>
<td>3–9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## INPUT SPECIFICATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

## ASSEMBLER CONTROLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.1 Introduction</td>
<td>5–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2 Overview asm51 Controls</td>
<td>5–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3 Description of asm51 Controls</td>
<td>5–6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## OPERANDS AND EXPRESSIONS 6-1

6.1 Operands .................................................... 6–3
6.1.1 Operands and Addressing Modes .................. 6–4
6.1.1.1 Indirect Addressing ................................. 6–4
6.1.1.2 Immediate Data ...................................... 6–4
6.1.1.3 Data Addressing ..................................... 6–5
6.1.1.4 Bit Addressing ....................................... 6–5
6.1.1.5 Code Addressing .................................... 6–6
6.2 Expressions .................................................. 6–7
6.2.1 Number ...................................................... 6–8
6.2.2 Expression String ....................................... 6–8
6.2.3 Symbol ..................................................... 6–9
6.3 Operators .................................................... 6–10
6.3.1 Addition and Subtraction ............................ 6–11
6.3.2 Sign Operators .......................................... 6–11
6.3.3 Multiplication and Division ......................... 6–12
6.3.4 Relational Operators ................................ 6–12
6.3.5 Bitwise Operators ..................................... 6–13
6.3.6 Shift Operators ......................................... 6–14
6.3.7 Selection Operators ................................... 6–14
6.4 Segment Type of Expressions ......................... 6–15
6.5 Predefined Symbols ...................................... 6–16
6.6 Include Files ................................................ 6–17

## ASSEMBLER DIRECTIVES 7-1

7.1 Introduction ............................................... 7–3
7.2 Directives Overview ..................................... 7–3
7.3 Debugging .................................................. 7–4
7.4 Location Counter ......................................... 7–4
7.5 Directives .................................................. 7–4
## INSTRUCTION SET 8-1

### LINKER 9-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9.1 Overview</td>
<td>9–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2 Introduction</td>
<td>9–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3 Naming Conventions</td>
<td>9–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4 Invocation</td>
<td>9–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5 Link51 Options</td>
<td>9–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6 Link51 Controls</td>
<td>9–23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6.1 Overview link51 Controls</td>
<td>9–23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6.2 Linking Controls</td>
<td>9–25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6.3 Locating Controls</td>
<td>9–25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6.4 Listing Controls</td>
<td>9–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6.5 Detailed Description of Controls</td>
<td>9–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.7 Link51 Output</td>
<td>9–73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8 Bank Switching</td>
<td>9–74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8.1 Writing Your own Bank Switch Routine</td>
<td>9–75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8.2 Common Area</td>
<td>9–76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8.3 Locating Algorithm</td>
<td>9–76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8.4 Function Pointers</td>
<td>9–77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8.5 Resources</td>
<td>9–77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.9 Linker Special Labels</td>
<td>9–78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.10 Linking with Libraries</td>
<td>9–79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.11 Linking OMF51 Objects and Libraries</td>
<td>9–80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.11.1 Case Sensitivity</td>
<td>9–80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.11.2 Object Format</td>
<td>9–80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.11.3 Module Selection</td>
<td>9–81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.11.4 Backward Referencing in Libraries</td>
<td>9–81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.12 Linker Implementation</td>
<td>9–82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.12.1 Cross–Reference</td>
<td>9–82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.12.2 Object Format</td>
<td>9–82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.12.3 Controls</td>
<td>9–83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.12.4 Module Selection</td>
<td>9–83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.12.5 Backward Referencing in Libraries</td>
<td>9–83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTILITIES</td>
<td>10-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>Archiver: ar51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>Object Report Writer: dmp51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>Flash Utilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>Formatter: ieee51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>Formatter: ihex51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>Formatter: omf51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>Formatter: srec51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>Make Utility: mk51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A.OUT FILE FORMAT</th>
<th>A-1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>File Header</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>Section Headers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Section Fillers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Relocation Records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>Name Records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>Extension Records</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MACRO PREPROCESSOR ERROR MESSAGES</th>
<th>B-1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Warnings (W)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Errors (E)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fatal Errors (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Informational Messages (I)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ASSEMBLER ERROR MESSAGES</th>
<th>C-1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Fatal Errors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Assembly Errors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Assembly Warnings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LINKER ERROR MESSAGES D-1
1 Overview D-3
2 Warnings D-3
3 Error Messages D-6
4 Fatal Errors D-10

INTEL HEX RECORDS E-1

MOTOROLA S-RECORDS F-1

INDEX
MANUAL PURPOSE AND STRUCTURE

PURPOSE

This manual is aimed at users of the ASM51 Cross-Assembler. It assumes that you are conversant with programming the 8051.

MANUAL STRUCTURE

Related Publications
Conventions Used In This Manual

Chapters
1. Overview
   Contains an introduction to the assembler which is part of the 8051 toolchain.
2. Macro Preprocessor
   Describes the action of, and options applicable to, the Macro Preprocessor.
3. Assembler
   Describes the actions and invocation of the ASM51 Cross-Assembler.
4. Input Specification
   Describes the formats of the possible statements for an assembly program.
5. Assembler Controls
   Describes the syntax and semantics of all assembler controls.
6. Operands and Expressions
   Describes the operands and expressions to be used in the assembler instructions and pseudos (directives).
7. Assembler Directives
   Describes the Pseudo instructions to pass information to the assembler program.
8. Instruction Set
   Gives a list of assembly language instruction mnemonics.
9. Linker
   Describes the action of, and options/controls applicable, to the linker
   link51.

10. Utilities
    Contains descriptions of the utilities supplied with the package, which
    may be useful during program development.

Appendices
A. A.out File Format
   Contains the layout of the output file produced by the package.

B. Macro Preprocessor Error Messages
   Gives a list of error messages which can be generated by the macro
   preprocessor.

C. Assembler Error Messages
   Gives a list of error messages which can be generated by the
   assembler.

D. Linker Error Messages
   Gives a list of error messages which can be generated by the linker.

E. Intel Hex Records
   Contains a description of the Intel Hex format.

F. Motorola S–Records
   Contains a description of the Motorola S–records.
RELATED PUBLICATIONS

  [TASKING, MA008-002-00-00]
  [TASKING, MA008-041-00-00]

CONVENTIONS USED IN THIS MANUAL

The notation used to describe the format of call lines is given below:

\{ \} \quad \text{Items shown inside curly braces enclose a list from which you must choose an item.}

\[ \] \quad \text{Items shown inside square brackets enclose items that are optional.}

\mid \quad \text{The vertical bar separates items in a list. It can be read as OR.}

\textit{italics} \quad \text{Items shown in italic letters mean that you have to substitute the item. If italic items are inside square brackets, they are optional. For example:}

\textit{filename}

\text{means: type the name of your file in place of the word \textit{filename}.}

\ldots \quad \text{An ellipsis indicates that you can repeat the preceding item zero or more times.}

\textbf{screen font} \quad \text{Represents input examples and screen output examples.}

\textbf{bold font} \quad \text{Represents a command name, an option or a complete command line which you can enter.}

For example

\texttt{command [option] \ldots filename}

This line could be written in plain English as: execute the command \texttt{command} with the optional options \texttt{option} and with the file \texttt{filename}. 
Illustrations

The following illustrations are used in this manual:

This is a note. It gives you extra information.

This is a warning. Read the information carefully.

This illustration indicates actions you can perform with the mouse.

This illustration indicates keyboard input.

This illustration can be read as “See also”. It contains a reference to another command, option or section.
CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

TASKING
1.1 INTRODUCTION

The TASKING 8051 toolchain can produce load files for running on the entire 8051 family.

The assembler asm51 accepts programs written according to the Intel assembly language specification for the 8051. A formatter enables the load file to be formatted into IEEE format ready for loading into a debugger. Another formatter enables the load file to be formatted into Intel Hex format ready for loading into an (E)PROM programmer, or into an emulator using a terminal emulation program.

The product contains the following programs:

- **mpp51** A string–macro preprocessor allowing macro substitution, file inclusion and conditional assembly, according to the Macro Preprocessor Language described in the chapter *Macro Preprocessor*.

- **asm51** The assembler program which produces an object file from a given assembly file.

- **link51** An overlaying linker which combines several object files and object libraries into one target load file.

- **xfw51** The 8051 CrossView Pro Debugger.

- **ar51** Librarian facility, which can be used to create and maintain object libraries.

- **dmp51** A utility program to report the contents of an object file.

- **ieee51** A program which formats files generated by the assembler to the IEEE format (used by a debugger).

- **ihex51** A program which formats files generated by the linker to Intel Hex Format Format.

- **omf51** A formatter to translate TCP a.out formatted files into absolute OMF51 format.

- **srec51** A program which formats files generated by the linker to Motorola S Format.

The 8051 assembler is part of a toolchain that provides an environment for modular program development and debugging. The following figure
explains the relationship between the different parts of the TASKING 8051 toolchain:

Figure 1-1: 8051 development flow
# 1.2 Environment Variables

This section contains an overview of the environment variables used by the 8051 toolchain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ASMDIR</td>
<td>With this variable you specify one or more additional directories in which the macro preprocessor <code>mpp51</code> looks for include files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC51INC</td>
<td>With this variable you specify one or more additional directories in which the C compiler <code>cc51</code> looks for include files. The compiler first looks in these directories, then always looks in the default include directory relative to the installation directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC51LIB</td>
<td>With this variable you specify one or more additional directories in which the linker <code>link51</code> looks for library files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LM_LICENSE_FILE</td>
<td>With this variable you specify the location of the license data file. You only need to specify this variable if the license file is not on its default location (<code>c:\flexlm</code> for Windows, <code>/usr/local/flexlm/licenses</code> for UNIX).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PATH</td>
<td>With this variable you specify the directory in which the executables reside. This allows you to call the executables when you are not in the <code>bin</code> directory. Usually your system already uses the PATH variable for other purposes. To keep these settings, you need to add (rather than replace) the path. Use a semicolon (<code>;</code>) to separate pathnames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TASKING_LIC_WAIT</td>
<td>If you set this variable, the tool will wait for a license to become available, if all licenses are taken. If you have not set this variable, the tool aborts with an error message. (Only useful with floating licenses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMPDIR</td>
<td>With this variable you specify the location where programs can create temporary files. Usually your system already uses this variable. In this case you do not need to change it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 1-1: Environment variables*


1.3 TEMPORARY FILES

The assembler, linker, locator and archiver may create temporary files. By default these files will be created in the current directory. If you want the tools to create temporary files in another directory you can enforce this by setting the environment variable TMPDIR.

PC:

    set TMPDIR=c:\tmp

UNIX:

    Bourne shell, Korn shell:

    TMPDIR=/tmp ; export TMPDIR

    csh:

    setenv TMPDIR /tmp

Note that if you create your temporary files on a directory which is accessible via the network for other users as well, conflicts in the names chosen for the temporary files may arise. It is safer to create temporary files in a directory that is solely accessible to yourself. Of course this does not apply if you run the tools with several users on a multi-user system, such as UNIX. Conflicts may arise if two different computer systems use the same network directory for tools to create their temporary files.

1.4 FORMATTING A FILE FOR A DEBUGGER

Before a file generated by the linker can be loaded into a debugger it must be in a suitable format. This format is known as IEEE–695. The 8051 Cross–Assembler package includes a utility program ieee51 which can format output files into this IEEE format.

The simplest call of this program follows; for a full description of ieee51 see the chapter Utilities.

    ieee51 opprog3 opprog3.abs

The output file opprog3.abs can now be loaded into a debugger.
### 1.5 FILE EXTENSIONS

The assembler accepts files with any extension (or even no extension), but by adding the extension `.src` to assembler source files, you can distinguish them easily.

Another reason for using the `.src` extension is that the assembler uses this extension by default if it is omitted. So,

```
asm51 write
```

has the same effect as

```
asm51 write.src
```

Both these commands assemble the file `write.src` and create a list file `write.lst` and a relocatable object module `write.obj`.

For compatibility with future TASKING Cross-Software the following extensions are suggested:

- `.asm`  input assembly source file for `mpp51`
- `.src` output from the string macro preprocessor `mpp51` or the C compiler / input for `asm51`
- `.obj` relocatable object files
- `.lib` object libraries files in archive format
- `.out` relocatable output files from `link51`
- `.abs` absolute IEEE–695 output files
- `.hex` absolute Intel Hex output files
- `.sre` absolute Motorola S–record output files
- `.lst` assembler list file
- `.l51` linker list file

### 1.6 PREPROCESSING

For a description of the possibilities offered by the string macro preprocessor see the chapter *Macro Preprocessor*. In this section we shall merely show how it can be used in conjunction with the assembler.

The program `write.src` does not need to be preprocessed using `mpp51`. We shall nevertheless use `write.src` file to demonstrate the use of the macro preprocessor. First the file `write.src` is renamed to `write.asm`. 
The simplest call to \texttt{mpp51} is:

\texttt{mpp51 write.asm}

The result of this command is that the file \texttt{write.src} will be created. The contents of this file will be the same as \texttt{write.asm}.

\section*{1.7 ASSEMBLER LISTING}

The assembler generates a listing file by default. As a result of the command:

\texttt{asm51 write.src}

the listing file \texttt{write.lst} is created. If a listing is not desired the NOPRINT control can be used. For example:

\texttt{asm51 write.src NOPRINT}

To redirect the listing information to another file the PRINT control is available. For example:

\texttt{asm51 write.src PRINT(list.lst)}

\texttt{asm51} is a three-pass assembler. The listing file is generated in the last phase.

\section*{1.8 ERROR MESSAGES}

Error messages from the cross-assembler are sent to the standard error device and written in the list file. If severe errors occur in one of the first two passes the error messages only occur on the standard error device because the assembler aborts before the third pass. It may however be useful to have a (not yet complete) list file of these first phases with the error messages inserted on the place where they occurred. This can be done using the LISTALL control.

If this control is specified the assembler creates a listing file in every phase. If a phase ends successfully, the listing file will be overwritten in the next phase.
1.9 SYMBOLIC DEBUGGING

To facilitate debugging, the programmer can decide how much symbolic debugging information to include in the load file. The following categories of information are available:

1. PUBLIC names
2. local names
3. compiler generated names
4. names defined in \texttt{?SYMB} directives
5. records for \texttt{?LINE} and \texttt{?FILE} directives
6. segment names
7. version information

Each category is associated with one bit of a 7-bit pattern; for a full description see the chapter \textit{Assembler Controls}. By default all categories except compiler generated names are included in the load file, which is correct for user written assembly programs.

PL/M51 generated assembly source files contain the control \texttt{DEBUGINFO( 0F9H )}, which exports everything except compiler generated names and assembler local symbols.

In the following example we shall use \texttt{DEBUGINFO}, requesting that all possible information be generated.

\begin{verbatim}
asm51 write.src DEBUGINFO( 377O )
\end{verbatim}

For more information, see the the debugging directives \texttt{?SYMB}, \texttt{?LINE}, \texttt{?FILE} in the chapter \textit{Assembler Directives}. 
CHAPTER 2

MACRO PREPROCESSOR
2.1 INTRODUCTION

The macro preprocessor, mpp51, is a string manipulation tool which allows you to write repeatedly used sections of code once and then insert that code at several places in your program. mpp51 also handles conditional assembly, assembly-time loops, console I/O and recursion.

The macro preprocessor is implemented as a separate program which saves both time and space in an assembler, particularly for those programs that do not use macros and thus need not run the macro preprocessor. mpp51 is compatible with Intel's syntax for the 8051 macro processing language (MPL). A user of macros must submit his source input to the macro preprocessor. The macro preprocessor produces one output file which can then be used as an input file to the 8051 Cross-assembler.

The macro preprocessor regards its input file as a stream of characters, not as a sequence of statements like the assembler does. The macro preprocessor scans the input (source) file looking for macro calls. A macro–call is a request to the macro preprocessor to replace the call pattern of a built-in or user–defined macro with its return value.

As soon as a macro call is encountered, the macro preprocessor expands the call to its return value. The return value of a macro is the text that replaces the macro call. This value is then placed in a temporary file, and the macro preprocessor continues. The return value of some macros is the null string, i.e., a character string containing no characters. So, when these macros are called, the call is replaced by the null string on the output file, and the assembler will never see any evidence of its presence. This is of course particularly useful for conditional assembly.

This chapter documents mpp51 in several parts. First the invocation of mpp51 is described. The following sections describe how to define and use your own macros, describe the syntax of the macro processing language and describe the macro preprocessor's built–in functions. This chapter also contains a section that is devoted to the advanced concepts of mpp51.

The first five sections give enough information to begin using the macro preprocessor. However, sometimes a more exact understanding of mpp51’s operation is needed. The advanced concepts section should fill those needs.
At macro time, symbols, labels, predefined assembler symbols, EQU, and SET symbols, and the location counter are not known. The macro preprocessor does not recognize the assembly language. Similarly, at assembly time, no information about macro symbols is known.

2.2 MPP51 INVOCATION

The command line invocation line of mpp51 is:

\[
\text{mpp51 } \text{[option]}... \text{input-file [output-file]}
\]

mpp51 -V
mpp51 -?

When you use a UNIX shell (C-shell, Bourne shell), arguments containing special characters (such as '(' ')') must be enclosed with " ". The invocations for UNIX and PC are the same, except for the -? option in the C-shell:

mpp51 "-?" or mpp51 \?-?

The input-file is an assembly source file containing user-defined macros. You must give a complete filename (no default file extension is taken).

The output-file is an assembly source file in which all user-defined macros are replaced. This file is the input file for asm51. If output-file is omitted, the output file has the same basename as the input file but with the file extension .src.

Invocation with -V only displays a version header.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-?</td>
<td>Display invocation syntax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Dm&lt;macro&gt;=def</td>
<td>Define preprocessor macro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-f file</td>
<td>Read options from file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-I directory</td>
<td>Look in directory for include files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-U m&lt;macro&gt;</td>
<td>Undefine preprocessor macro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-V</td>
<td>Display version header only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-o filename</td>
<td>Specify name of output file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--allow-undefined-macro</td>
<td>Allow expansion of undefined macros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--disable=n[,n]...</td>
<td>Suppress a warning and/or error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--file-info</td>
<td>Generate source file line info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--info-messages</td>
<td>Generate info messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--max-nesting=value</td>
<td>Set the maximum include file nesting level (default=31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--parameters-redefine</td>
<td>Allow macro parameters to be redefined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--prompt=string</td>
<td>Set the prompt for the %IN command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--skip-asm-comment</td>
<td>Skip parsing after assembly comment ';'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--warn-on-undefined-macro</td>
<td>Warn on expansion of undefined macros</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2–1: *mpp51* options

2.2.1 DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF MACRO PREPROCESSOR OPTIONS

With options that can be set from within EDE, you will find a mouse icon that describes the corresponding action.
Option: 
-?

Description:
Display an explanation of options at stdout.

Example:
mpp51 -?
--allow-undefined-macro

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Add the option to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

--allow-undefined-macro
--no-allow-undefined-macro

Default:

--no-allow-undefined-macro

Description:

With this option the macro preprocessor will not issue an error when it finds an undefined macro.

Example:

mpp51 --allow-undefined-macro test.asm
**-D**

**Option:**

From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options**... Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Macro Preprocessor**. Define a macro (syntax: `macro[=def]`) in the **Define user macros** field. You can specify and define more macros by separating them with commas.

**-Dmacro=[def]**

**Arguments:**

The macro you want to define and optionally its definition.

**Description:**

Define `macro` as in 'define'. Any number of symbols can be defined. If `def` is not given, the symbol is defined to the null string.

**Example:**

The following command defines symbol `LEVEL` to 3:

```
mpp51 -DLEVEL=3 test.asm
```

The following command defines symbol `LEVEL` to the null string:

```
mpp51 -DLEVEL= test.asm
```
--disable

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Add the option to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

--disable=number[,number]...

Description:

With this option you can suppress one or more errors or warnings.

Example:

To suppress errors 115 and 116, enter:

    mpp51 --disable=115,116 test.asm
-f

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Add the option to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

-f file

Arguments:

A filename for command line processing. The filename "-" may be used to denote standard input.

Description:

Use file for command line processing. To get around the limits on the size of the command line, it is possible to use command files. These command files contain the options that could not be part of the real command line. Command files can also be generated on the fly, for example by the make utility.

More than one -f option is allowed.

Some simple rules apply to the format of the command file:

1. It is possible to have multiple arguments on the same line in the command file.

2. To include whitespace in the argument, surround the argument with either single or double quotes.

3. If single or double quotes are to be used inside a quoted argument, we have to go by the following rules:

   a. If the embedded quotes are only single or double quotes, use the opposite quote around the argument. Thus, if a argument should contain a double quote, surround the argument with single quotes.

   b. If both types of quotes are used, we have to split the argument in such a way that each embedded quote is surrounded by the opposite type of quote.
Example:

"This has a single quote ’ embedded"

or

'This has a double quote " embedded'

or

'This has a double quote " and \ a single quote ’’ embedded"

4. Some operating systems impose limits on the length of lines within a text file. To circumvent this limitation it is possible to use continuation lines. These lines end with a backslash and newline. In a quoted argument, continuation lines will be appended without stripping any whitespace on the next line. For non-quoted arguments, all whitespace on the next line will be stripped.

Example:

"This is a continuation \ line"

    -> "This is a continuation line"

control(file1(mode,type),
        file2(type))

    ->
control(file1(mode,type),file2(type))

5. It is possible to nest command line files up to 25 levels.

Example:

Suppose the file mycmds contains the following line:

    -DLEVEL=3
test.asm

The command line can now be:

    mpp51 -f mycmds
Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Add the option to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

```
--file-info
--no-file-info
```

Default:

```
--file-info
```

Description:

By default, the macro preprocessor generates source file line information, such as:

```
# 1 "<path>/test.asm"
```

With option `--no-file-info` the macro preprocessor does not generate this information.

Example:

```
mpp51 --no-file-info test.asm
```
Option:

From the **Project** menu, select **Directories...** Add one or more directory paths to the **Include Files Path** field.

```
-I directory
```

**Arguments:**

The name of the directory to search for include file(s).

**Description:**

Change the algorithm for searching $INCLUDE files whose names do not have an absolute pathname to look in directory. Thus, $INCLUDE files are searched for first in the directory of the file containing the $INCLUDE line, then in directories named in `-I` options in left-to-right order. If the files are still not found *mpp51* checks if the environment variable ASMDIR exists. If it does, it searches the directories specified in ASMDIR. More than one directory can be specified to ASMDIR by separating the directories with a semi–colon `;`.

**Example:**

```
mpp51 -I/proj/include test.asm
```

Section **Include Files**
--info-messages

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Add the option to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

```
--info-messages
--no-info-messages
```

Default:

```
--info-messages
```

Description:

By default, the macro preprocessor can generate informational messages in addition to errors or warnings. With option `--no-info-messages` the macro preprocessor does not generate informational messages.

Example:

```
mp51 --no-info-messages test.asm
```
--max-nesting

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Add the option to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

Default:

31

Description:

With this option you can set the maximum include file nesting level.

Example:

To set the maximum include file nesting level to 50, enter:

mpp51 --max-nesting=50 test.asm
--parameters-redefine

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Add the option to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

--parameters-redefine
--no-parameters-redefine

Default:

--no-parameters-redefine

Description:

With option --parameters-redefine it is allowed to use the %SET macro to redefine a macro parameter.

Example:

mpp51 --parameters-redefine test.asm
Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Add the option to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

```
--prompt=string
```

Default:

```
>
```

Description:

With this option you can set the prompt for the %IN built-in function.

Example:

To set the prompt for the %IN function to "cmd>", enter:

```
mp51 --prompt="cmd>" test.asm
```
-o

Option:

EDE determines the name of the output file with the same basename as the input file and extension .src.

Arguments:

An output filename.

Default:

Basename of input file with .src suffix.

Description:

Use filename as output filename of the macro preprocessor, instead of the basename of the input file with the .src extension.

Example:

To create the assembly file myfile.src instead of test.src, enter:

mpp51 test.asm -omyfile.src
--skip-asm-comment

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Add the option to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

--skip-asm-comment
--no-skip-asm-comment

Default:

--no-skip-asm-comment

Description:

With option --skip-asm-comment the macro preprocessor skips parsing after assembly comment ‘;’. By default, comment is also parsed.

Example:

mpp51 --skip-asm-comment test.asm
-U

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options...
Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Remove definitions from the Define user macros field or add the option -U to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

Arguments:

The macro you want to undefine.

Description:

With this option you can undefine a previously defined symbol.

Example:

The following command undefines symbol LEVEL:

mpp51 -ULEVEL test.asm
-V

Option:

-V

Description:

With this option you can display the version header of the macro preprocessor. This option must be the only argument of mpp51. Other options are ignored. mpp51 exits after displaying the version header.

Example:

mpp51 -V

TASKING 8051 macro preprocessor    vx.yrz Build nnn
Copyright years Altium BV            Serial# 00000000
--warn-on-undefined-macro

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Macro Preprocessor. Add the option to the Additional macro preprocessor options field.

--warn-on-undefined-macro
--no-warn-on-undefined-macro

Default:

--no-warn-on-undefined-macro

Description:

With option --warn-on-undefined-macro the macro preprocessor generates warning W 201 instead of error E 301 when an undefined macro name is found.

Example:

mpp51 --warn-on-undefined-macro test.asm
2.3 INCLUDE FILES

If the macro preprocessor encounters a $INCLUDE statement in the input file, preprocessing will continue by scanning the specified file until an end-of-file or another INCLUDE is encountered.

Syntax:

$INCLUDE(file)

Abbreviation:

$IC(file)

Expansion:

$<spaces><eol># 1 "file"

Description:

The '$' must be in column 1 for the macro preprocessor to recognize it for processing at macro time. In the output file the INCLUDE(file) part of the INCLUDE call is replaced by spaces (because the assembler also recognizes the '$' character but does not recognize INCLUDE as a control). Also a line containing # 1 "file" is put in the output file.

As soon as the macro preprocessor encounters an end-of-file in the include file, input is resumed where it left off, namely at the next line after the latest INCLUDE call (which due to nesting does not necessarily mean returning to the original input file). Nesting of include files is allowed up to 32 files.

If the macro preprocessor after recognizing the '$' character does not find an INCLUDE before it encounters an end-of-line, due to misspelling or simple because the '$' is followed by a control only recognized by the assembler, no macro-time error is reported and scanned characters are simply passed to the output file.

mpp51 first searches for $INCLUDE files in the directory of the file containing the $INCLUDE line, then in directories named in -l options in left-to-right order. If the files are still not found mpp51 checks if the environment variable ASMDIR exists. If it does, it searches the directories specified in ASMDIR. More than one directory can be specified to ASMDIR by separating the directories with a semi-colon ':'.
Restriction:

Each control line (i.e. a line starting with '$') may not contain more than one INCLUDE call.

Example:

; source lines

$include( mysrc.inc ) ; include the contents of
; file mysrc.inc

; other source lines

2.4 CREATING AND CALLING MACROS

Macro calls differ between user-defined macros and so-called built-in functions. All characters in **bold** typeface in the syntax descriptions of the following sections are constituents of the macro syntax. *Italic* tokens represent placeholders for user-specific declarations.

The macro preprocessor scans through the input source, one character at a time, looking for a special character called the METACHARACTER, the percent sign '%'. Initially, this metacharacter must precede a macro-call. Until the macro preprocessor finds a metacharacter, it does not process text. It simply passes the text from the input file to the output file.

Since mpp51 only processes macro calls, it is necessary to call a macro in order to create other macros, the so-called "user-defined macros". The built-in function DEFINE creates macros. Built-in functions are a predefined part of the macro language, so they may be called without prior definition. The general syntax for DEFINE is shown below.

**Syntax:**

```%
[^[macro-name] [parameter-list]] [LOCAL local-list]
(macro-body)
```

DEFINE is the most important mpp51 built-in function. This section is devoted to describing this built-in function. Each of the symbols in the syntax above (macro-name, parameter-list, local-list and macro-body) are described in detail on the pages that follow. In some cases, we have abbreviated this general syntax to emphasize certain concepts.
**2.4.1 CREATING PARAMETERLESS Macros**

When you create a parameterless macro, there are two parts to a DEFINE call: the *macro-name* and the *macro-body*. The *macro-name* defines the name used when the macro is called; the *macro-body* defines the return value of the call.

**Syntax:**

```
%%[*]DEFINE (macro-name) (macro-body)
```

The '%' character signals a macro call. The '*' is the optional literal character. When you define a macro using the literal character '*', as shown above, macro calls contained in the body of the macro are not expanded until the macro is called. The exact use of the literal character is discussed in the advanced concept section. When you define a parameterless macro, the *macro-name* is a macro identifier that follows the '%' character in the source line. The rules for macro identifier are:

- The identifier must begin with an upper or lowercase alphabetic character (A,B,...,Z or a,b,...,z), or a special character (a question mark '?' or an underscore character '_').
- The remaining characters may be alphabetic, special or decimal digits (0,1,2,...,9).
- Only the first 31 characters of a macro identifier are recognized as the unique identifier name. Upper and lower case characters are not distinguished in a macro identifier.

The *macro-body* is usually the return value of the macro call. However, the *macro-body* may contain calls to other macros. If so, the return value is actually the fully expanded *macro-body*, including the return values of the call to other macros. The macro call is re-expanded each time it is called.
Example 1:

\%*DEFINE (String_1) (An)
\%*DEFINE (String_2) (ele)
\%*DEFINE (String_3) (phant)
\%*DEFINE (String_4) (shopping)
\%DEFINE (String_5) (goes \%String_4)
\%DEFINE (Part_1)
(%String_1 \%String_2\%String_3)

The *macro-body* must consist of a balanced-text string, i.e. you must have balanced parentheses within the *macro-body*. In other words, each left parenthesis must have a succeeding right parenthesis, and each right parenthesis must have a preceding left parenthesis.

The possible placement of the *macro-body* and the parenthesis are both represented in the above examples. The beginning of the *macro-body* is determined by the syntactical end of the left parenthesis, where tabs (08H), blanks and the first new line (0AH) are also part of the *macro-body*.

The *macro-body* of String_1 starts with the 'A' of "An"
The *macro-body* of String_3 starts with the 'p' of "phant"
The *macro-body* of String_4 starts with the '(08H)' of "(08H)shopping".

The end of *macro-body* is determined by the right parenthesis.

The *macro-body* of String_4 is "(08H)shopping"
The *macro-body* of String_5 is "goes (0AH) (08H)shopping"

The expanded value of DEFINE is the null string, but the macro body is stored internally for later use. User-defined macros may invoke themselves within their bodies. This property is called 'recursion'. Any macro which calls itself must terminate eventually or the macro preprocessor may enter an infinite loop.

Once a macro has been created, it may be redefined by a second call to DEFINE.
To call a macro, you use the ‘%’ character followed by the name of the macro (the literal character ‘*’ is only admissible for defined macros whose call is passed to a macro as a an actual parameter; example: %M1(%*M2)). The macro preprocessor removes the call and inserts the return value of the call. If the macro-body contains any call to other macros, they are replaced with their return values.

**Example 2:**

%Part_1 %String_5 --> An elephant goes shopping

Once a macro has been created, it may be redefined by a second call to DEFINE. Note, however that a macro should not redefine itself within its body (see *Advanced mpp51 Concepts*).

The examples below show several macro definitions. Their return values are also shown.

**Example 3:**

Macro definition at the top of the program:

```plaintext
%*DEFINE (MOVE)
( MOV A, @R1
  MOV @R2, A
)
```

The macro call as it appears in the program:

```plaintext
MOV R1, #1
-----%MOVE
```

The program as it appears after the macro preprocessor made the following expansion, where the first expanded line is preceded by the four blanks preceding the call (the sign – indicates the preceding blanks):

```plaintext
MOV R1, #1
----- MOV A, @R1
    MOV @R2, A
```
Example 4:

Macro definition at the top of the program:

```
%*DEFINE (ADD5)
( MOV  R0, #5
  MOV  R5, @R2
  ADD  R5, R0
)
```

The macro call as it appears in the original program body:

```
MOV  R5, #2
%ADD5
```

The program after the macro expansion:

```
MOV  R5, #2
MOV  R0, #5
MOV  R5, @R2
ADD  R5, R0
```

Example 5:

Macro definition at the top of the program:

```
%*DEFINE (MOVE_AND_ADD) (
  %MOVE
  %ADD5
)
```

The macro call as it appears in the body of the program:

```
MOV  R1, #1
%MOVE_AND_ADD
```

The program after the macro expansion:

```
MOV  R1, #1
MOV  A, @R1
MOV  @R2, A
MOV  R0, #5
MOV  R5, @R2
ADD  R5, R0
```
2.4.2 CREATING MACROS WITH PARAMETERS

If the only function of the macro preprocessor was to perform simple string replacement, then it would not be very useful for most of the programming tasks. Each time we wanted to change even the simplest part of the macro’s return value we would have to redefine the macro.

Parameters in macro calls allow more general-purpose macros. Parameters leave holes in a macro-body that are filled in when you call the macro. This permits you to design a single macro that produces code for typical programming operations. The term 'parameters' refers to both the formal parameters that are specified when the macro is defined (the holes, and the actual parameters or arguments that are specified when the macro is called (the fill-ins).

The syntax for defining macros with parameters is very similar to the syntax for macros without parameters.

Syntax:

```
%[*]DEFINE (macro-name|parameter-list) (macro-body)
```

The `macro-name` must be a valid identifier.

The `parameter-list` is a list of macro identifiers separated by macro delimiters. These identifiers comprise the formal parameters used in the macro. The macro identifier for each parameter in the list must be unique, but they may be the same as other formal argument names to other macros since they have no existence outside the macro definition. They may also be the same as the names of other user macros or of macro functions. Note, however that in this case the macro or function cannot be used within the `macro-body`, since its name would be recognized as a parameter instead. To reference a formal argument within the `macro-body`, use its name preceded by the metacharacter.

Typically, the macro delimiters are parentheses and commas. When using these delimiters, you would enclose the `parameter-list` in parentheses and separate each formal parameter with a comma. When you define a macro using parentheses and commas as delimiters, you must use those same delimiters, when you call that macro.

The example below shows the definition of a macro with three parameters: `SOURCE`, `DEST` and `COUNT`. The macro produces code to copy any number of words from one part of memory to another.
Example:

```assembly
%*DEFINE (MOVE_ADD_GEN(SOURCE,DEST,COUNT))
(    MOV  R1, #%SOURCE
    MOV  R0, #%DEST
    MOV  R7, #%COUNT
    MOV  A, @R1
    MOV  @R0, A
    INC  R1
    INC  R0
    DJNZ R7, ($-4)
)
```

To call a macro with parameters, you must use the metacharacter followed by the macro’s name as with parameterless macros. However, a list of the actual parameters must follow. These actual parameters have to be enclosed within parentheses and separated from each other by commas. The actual parameters may optionally contain calls to other macros.

A simple call to a macro defined above might be:

```assembly
%MOVE_ADD_GEN( 10, 24, 8 )
```

The above macro call produces the following code:

```assembly
MOV  R1, #10
MOV  R0, #24
MOV  R7, #8
MOV  A, @R1
MOV  @R0, A
INC  R1
INC  R0
DJNZ R7, ($-4)
```
2.4.3 LOCAL SYMBOLS IN MACROS

If we used a fixed label instead of the offset ($-4$) in the previous example, the macro using the fixed label can only be called once, since a second call to the macro causes a conflict in the label definitions at assembly time. The label can be made a parameter and a different symbol name can be specified each time the macro is called.

A preferable way to ensure a unique label for each macro call is to put the label in a local-list. The local-list construct allows you to use macro identifiers to specify assembly-time symbols. Each use of a LOCAL symbol in a macro guarantees that the symbol will be replaced by a unique assembly-time symbol each time the symbol is called.

The macro preprocessor increments a counter once for each symbol used in the list every time your program calls a macro that uses the LOCAL construct. Symbols in the local-list, when used in the macro-body, receive a two to five digit suffix that is the hexadecimal value of the counter. The first time you call a macro that uses the LOCAL construct, the suffix is '00'.

The syntax for the LOCAL construct in the DEFINE function is shown below. (This is the complete syntax for the built-in function DEFINE):

Syntax:

\[
\%\{\text{DEFINE} \ (\text{macro-name}[\text{parameter-list}]) \ [\text{LOCAL} \ \text{local-list}] \ (\text{macro-body})\}
\]

The local-list is a list of valid macro identifiers separated by spaces. Since these macro identifiers are not parameters, the LOCAL construct in a macro has no effect on a macro call.

To reference local symbols in the macro-body, they must be preceded by the metacharacter. The symbol LOCAL is not reserved; a user symbol or macro may have this name.

The next example shows a macro definition that uses a LOCAL list.
Example:

```assembly
%*DEFINE (MOVE_ADD_GEN(SOURCE,DEST,COUNT)) LOCAL LAB
(    MOV  R1, #%SOURCE
    MOV  R0, #%DEST
    MOV  R7, #%COUNT
%LAB:
    MOV  A, @R1
    MOV  @R0, A
    INC  R1
    INC  R0
    DJNZ R7, %LAB
 )
```

A simple call to a macro defined above might be:

```assembly
%MOVE_ADD_GEN( 50, 100, 24 )
```

The above macro call might produce the following code (if this is he
leventh call to a macro using a LOCAL list):

```assembly
MOV  R1, #50
MOV  R0, #100
MOV  R7, #24
LAB0A:
    MOV  A, @R1
    MOV  @R0, A
    INC  R1
    INC  R0
    DJNZ R7, LAB0A
```

Since macro identifiers follow the same rules as ASM51, any macro
identifier can be used in a local-list. However, if long identifier names are
used, they should be restricted to 29 characters. Otherwise, the label suffix
may cause the identifier to exceed 31 characters and these would be
 truncated.
2.5 THE MACRO PREPROCESSOR’S BUILT-IN FUNCTIONS

The macro preprocessor has several built-in or predefined macro functions. These built-in functions perform many useful operations that are difficult or impossible to produce in a user–defined macro.

We have already discussed one of these built-in functions, DEFINE. DEFINE creates user–defined macros. DEFINE does this by adding an entry in the macro preprocessor’s tables of macro definitions. Each entry in the tables includes the macro–name of the macro, its parameter–list, its local–list and its macro–body. Entries for the built–in functions are present when the macro preprocessor begins operation.

Other built–in functions perform numerical and logical expression evaluation, affect control flow of the macro preprocessor, manipulate character strings, and perform console I/O.

The following sections deal with the following:

Comment, escape, bracket, group (‘...’, ‘...’, n..., (...), {...} )

Metachar function (METACHAR)

Expressions processed by mpp51

Calculating functions (SET, EVAL)

Undefine function (UNDEF)

Controlling functions (IF, IFDEF/IFNDEF, WHILE, REPEAT, EXIT)

String–processing functions (LEN, SUBSTR, MATCH)

String–comparing functions (EQS, NES, LTS, LES, GTS, GES)

Message functions (ERROR, FATAL)

File/line info functions (__FILE__, __LINE__)

Option function (OPTION)

Input/Output functions (IN, OUT)
2.5.1 **COMMENT, ESCAPE, BRACKET AND GROUP FUNCTIONS**

2.5.1.1 **COMMENT FUNCTION**

The macro processing language can be very subtle, and the operation of macros written in a straightforward manner may not be immediately obvious. Therefore, it is often necessary to comment macro definitions.

**Syntax:**

```
%’text’
```

or

```
%’text end-of-line
```

The comment function always evaluates to the null string. Two terminating characters are recognized: the apostrophe ‘ and the end-of-line (line-feed character, ASCII 0AH). The second form of the call allows macro definitions to be spread over several lines, while avoiding any unwanted end-of-lines in the return value. In either form of the comment function, the text or comment is not evaluated for macro calls.

The literal character ‘*’ is not accepted in connection with this function.

**Example:**

```%
*DEFINE (MOVE_ADD_GEN(SOURCE,DEST,COUNT)) LOCAL LAB
(    MOV  R1, #%SOURCE %’This is the source address’
    MOV  R0, #%DEST %’This is the destination’
    MOV  R7, #%COUNT %’COUNT must be a constant’
%LAB:     %’This is a local label.
%’End of line is inside the comment!
    MOV  A, @R1
    MOV  @R0, A
    INC  R1
    INC  R0
    DJNZ R7, %LAB
)
%
```

Call the above macro:

```%
MOVE_ADD_GEN( 50, 100, 24 )
```
Return value from above call:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{MOV} & \ R1, \ #50 \\
\text{MOV} & \ R0, \ #100 \\
\text{MOV} & \ R7, \ #24 \\
\text{LAB0A:} \\
& \text{MOV} \ A, \ @R1 \\
& \text{MOV} \ @R0, \ A \\
& \text{INC} \ R1 \\
& \text{INC} \ R0 \\
& \text{DJNZ} \ R7, \ \text{LAB0A}
\end{align*}
\]

Note that the comments that were terminated with the *end-of-line*
removed the *end-of-line* character along with the rest of the comment.

The metacharacter is not recognized as flagging a call to the macro
preprocessor when it appears in the comment function.

### 2.5.1.2 ESCAPE FUNCTION

Sometimes it is necessary to prevent the macro preprocessor from
processing text. The escape function and the bracket function perform
such tasks.

**Syntax:**

\%

\text{-}n \text{-}text-of-n-characters-long

The escape function prevents the macro preprocessor from processing a
text string of \( n \) characters long, where \( n \) is a decimal digit from 0 to 9. The
escape function is useful for inserting a metacharacter as text, adding a
comma as part of an argument, or placing a single parenthesis in a
character string that requires balanced parentheses.

The literal character "*" is not accepted in connection with this function.
Example:

Before Macro Expansion After Macro Expansion

;Average of 20%1%       -> ;Average of 20%

%DTCALL(JAN 21%1, 1992,  -> JAN 21, 1992
   JUN 12%1, 1992)    -> JUN 12, 1992

%MYCALL(1%1) Option 1,  -> 1) Option 1
   2%1) Option 2,     -> 2) Option 2
   3%1) Option 2)     -> 3) Option 3

The first example add a literal '%' in the text. The second example keeps
the date as one actual parameter adding a literal ','. The third example
adds a literal right parenthesis ')' to each parameter.

2.5.1.3 BRACKET FUNCTION

The bracket function is the other built-in function that prevents the macro
preprocessor from expanding text.

Syntax:

%((balanced-text))

The bracket function prevents all macro preprocessor expansion of the
text contained within the parentheses. However, the escape function, the
comment function, and the parameter substitution are still recognized.
Since there is no restriction for the length of the text within the bracket
function, it is usually easier to use than the escape function.

The literal character '*' is not accepted in connection with this function.

Example:

%*DEFINE (DW(LIST,NAME))
   (    %NAME  DW  %LIST)

The macro DW expands DW statements, where the variable NAME
represents the first parameter and the expression LIST represents the
second parameter.

The following expansion should be obtained by the call:

PHONE DW 198H, 3DH, 0FOH
If the call in the following form:

\%DW(198H, 3DH, 0F0H, PHONE)

occurs, the macro preprocessor would interpret the first argument (198H) as NAME and everything after the first comma as the second parameter, since the first comma would be interpreted as the delimiter separating the macro parameters.

In order to change this method of interpretation, all tokens that are to be combined for an individual parameter must be identified as a parameter string and set in a bracket function:

\%DW(%(198H, 3DH, 0F0H), PHONE)

This way the bracket function prevents the string '198H, 3DH, 0F0H' from being evaluated as separate parameters.

### 2.5.1.4 GROUP FUNCTION

The group function does the opposite of the bracket function, it ensures that the text is expanded.

**Syntax:**

\>%{balanced-text}

The contents of the group macro is expanded and the resulting string is then interpreted itself like a macro command. This allows for definition of complex recursive macros. Another useful application of the group command is to separate macro identifiers from surrounding, possible valid identifier characters.

The literal character '*' is not accepted in connection with this function.

**Example:**

\%define(TEXTA)(Text A)
\%define(TEXTB)(Text B)
\%define(TEXTC)(Text C)
\%define(SELECT)(B)

\>%{TEXT%SELECT}
The contents of the group function, TEXT%SELECT, expands to TEXTB, which on its turn is expanded like %TEXTB resulting in Text B.

**Example:**

```%
define(op)(add)
%
{op}_and_move
```

The group function ensures that the macro op is expanded. Without it, op_and_move would be seen as the macro identifier.

### 2.5.2 METACHAR FUNCTION

The METACHAR function can be used to redefine the *metacharacter* (initially: '%')

**Syntax:**

```%
%METACHAR(balanced-text)
```

Although the balanced-text string may be any number of characters long, only the first character in the string is taken to be the new metacharacter. Macro calls in the balanced-text string are still recognized and corresponding actions that will not lead to any direct expansion on the output file will be performed. So, for example a SET macro call inside the balanced-text string will be performed.

Characters that may not be used as a metacharacter are: a blank, letter, digit, left or right parenthesis, or asterisk.

The following example is catastrophic !!!

```%
%METACHAR( & )
```

This examples defines the space character as the new metacharacter, since it is the first character in the balanced-text strings!
2.5.3 NUMBERS AND EXPRESSIONS IN MPP51

Many built-in functions recognize and evaluate numerical expressions in their arguments. mpp51 uses the same rules for representing numbers as asm51 (see chapter Operands And Expressions for detailed information):

- Numbers may be represented in the formats binary (B suffix), octal (O or Q suffix), decimal (D or no suffix), and hexadecimal (H suffix).
- Internal representation of numbers is 16–bits (00H to 0FFFFH); the processor does not recognize or output real or long integer numbers.
- The following operators are recognized by the macro preprocessor (in descending precedence):

  1. '( ' )'
  2. LOW HIGH
  3. '/' MOD SHL SHR
  4. '+' '-' (both binary and unary)
  5. EQ NE LE LT GE GT
  6. NOT
  7. AND
  8. OR XOR

The symbolic forms of the relational operators (i.e., <, >, =, <=, =>) are not recognized by the macro preprocessor.

The macro preprocessor cannot access the assembler's symbol table. The values of labels, location counter, EQU and SET symbols are not known during macro time expression evaluation. Any attempt to use assembly time symbols in a macro time expression generates an error. Macro time symbols can be defined, however, with the predefined macro, SET.
2.5.4 SET FUNCTION

SET assigns the value of the numeric *expression* to the identifier, *macro-variable*, and stores the *macro-variable* in the macro time symbol table, *macro-variable* must follow the same syntax convention used for other macro identifiers. Expansion of a *macro-variable* always results in hexadecimal format.

**Syntax:**

\[
\%\text{SET}(\text{macro-variable},\text{expression})
\]

The SET macro call affects the macro time symbol table only; when SET is encountered, the macro preprocessor replaces it with the null string. Symbols defined by SET can be redefined by a second SET call, or defined as a macro by a DEFINE call. The SET function is thanks to the necessary compatibility with Intel the only predefined macro function which may be redefined. Such a redefinition of the SET function must however be strongly dissuaded, because as a consequence, the original functionality will be lost for the rest of the program, i.e., macro-time symbols can no longer be defined.

**Example:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\%\text{SET}(&\text{COUNT,0}) & \rightarrow \text{null string} \\
\%\text{SET}(&\text{OFFSET,16}) & \rightarrow \text{null string} \\
\text{MOV R1,} & \%\text{COUNT + OFFSET} \rightarrow \text{MOV R1,#0H + 10H} \\
\text{MOV R2,} & \%\text{COUNT} \rightarrow \text{MOV R2,#0H}
\end{align*}
\]

SET can also be used to redefine symbols in the macro time table:

\[
\begin{align*}
\%\text{SET}(&\text{COUNT, COUNT + OFFSET}) & \rightarrow \text{null string} \\
\%\text{SET}(&\text{OFFSET, OFFSET * 2}) & \rightarrow \text{null string} \\
\text{MOV R1,} & \%\text{COUNT + OFFSET} \rightarrow \text{MOV R1,#10H + 20H} \\
\text{MOV R2,} & \%\text{COUNT} \rightarrow \text{MOV R2,#10H}
\end{align*}
\]
### 2.5.5 EVAL FUNCTION

The built-in function EVAL accepts an expression as its argument and returns the expression's value in hexadecimal.

**Syntax:**

```
%EVAL( expression )
```

The expression argument must be a legal macro-time expression. The return value from EVAL is built according to asm51's rules for representing hexadecimal numbers. The trailing character is always the hexadecimal suffix (H). The expanded value is at most 16 bits and negative numbers are shown in two's complement form. If the leading digit of the return-value is 'A', 'B', 'C', 'D', 'E' or 'F', it is preceded by a 0.

**Example:**

```
COUNT SET %EVAL(33H + 15H + 0f00H)        -> COUNT SET 0f48H
MOV  R1, #%EVAL(10H - ((13+6) *2 ) +7)   -> MOV  R1, #0fff1H
%SET( NUM1, 44)   -> null string
%SET( NUM2, 25)   -> null string
MOV   R1, #%EVAL( %NUM1 LE %NUM2 )        -> MOV  R1, #00H
```

### 2.5.6 UNDEF FUNCTION

The built-in function UNDEF can be used to undefine a previously defined macro, and also to undefine one of the predefined macro functions.

**Syntax:**

```
%UNDEF( identifier )
```

The identifier must be a previously defined macro name or one of the built-in functions. The UNDEF command is replaced with the null string.

**Example:**

```
%DEFINE(TEMP)(path)    -> macro TEMP is defined
%UNDEF(TEMP)           -> null string, TEMP is undefined
%UNDEF(SET)            -> null string
%SET(COUNT,0)          -> undefined macro name: SET
```
Several built-in functions return a logical value when they are called. Like relational operators that compare numbers and return TRUE or FALSE ('0fffH' or '00H') respectively, these built-in functions compare character strings. If the function evaluates to 'TRUE', then it returns the character string '0fffH'. If the function evaluates to 'FALSE', then it returns '00H'.

The built-in functions that return a logical value compare two *balanced-text* arguments and return a logical value based on that comparison. The list of string comparison functions below shows the syntax and describes the type of comparison made for each. Both arguments may contain macro calls.

\[
\begin{align*}
\%EQS & \left( arg1, arg2 \right) \quad \text{TRUE if both arguments are identical; equal} \\
\%NES & \left( arg1, arg2 \right) \quad \text{TRUE if arguments are different in any way; not equal} \\
\%LTS & \left( arg1, arg2 \right) \quad \text{TRUE if first argument has a lower value than second argument; less than} \\
\%LES & \left( arg1, arg2 \right) \quad \text{TRUE if first argument has a lower value than second argument or if both arguments are identical; less than or equal} \\
\%GTS & \left( arg1, arg2 \right) \quad \text{TRUE if first argument has a higher value than second argument; greater than} \\
\%GES & \left( arg1, arg2 \right) \quad \text{TRUE if first argument has a higher value than second argument, or if both arguments are identical; greater than or equal}
\end{align*}
\]

Before these functions perform a comparison, both strings are completely expanded. Then the ASCII value of the first character in the first string is compared to the ASCII value of the first character in the second string. If they differ, then the string with the higher ASCII value is to be considered to be greater. If the first characters are the same, the process continues with the second character in each string, and so on. Only two strings of equal length that contain the same characters in the same order are equal.
**Example:**

**Before Macro Expansion** | **After Macro Expansion**
--- | ---
%EQS(ABC,ABC) | 0ffffH (TRUE). The character strings are identical.
%EQS(ABC,ABC) | 00H (FALSE). The space after the comma is part of the second argument.
%LTS(CBA,cba) | 0ffffH (TRUE). The lower case characters have a higher ASCII value than upper case.
%GES(ABC,ABC) | 00H (FALSE). The space at the end of the second string makes the second string greater than the first one.
%GTS(16,111H) | 0ffffH (TRUE). ASCII ‘6’ is greater than ASCII ‘1’.

The strings to the string comparison macros have to follow the rules of the balanced-text described earlier.

%MATCH(NEXT,LIST)(CAT,DOG_MOUSE)

%EQS(%NEXT,CAT)  -> 0ffffH (TRUE)
%EQS(DOG,%SUBSTR(%LIST,1,3))  -> 0ffffH (TRUE)

### 2.5.8 CONTROL FLOW FUNCTIONS AND CONDITIONAL ASSEMBLY

Some built-in functions expect logical expressions in their arguments. Logical expressions follow the same rules as numeric expressions. The difference is in how the macro interprets the 16-bit value that the expression represents. Once the expression has been evaluated to a 16-bit value, mpp51 uses only the low-order bit to determine whether the expression is TRUE or FALSE. If the low-order bit is one, the expression is TRUE. If the low-order bit is zero the expression is FALSE.
Typically, the relational operators (EQ, NE, LE, LT, GE, or GT) or the string comparison functions (EQS, NES, LES LTS, GES, or GTS) are used to specify a logical value. Since these operators and functions always evaluate to 0FFFFH or 00H, internal determination is not necessary.

### 2.5.8.1 IF FUNCTION

The IF built-in function evaluates a logical expression, and based on that expression, expands or withholds its text arguments.

The IF function allows a user to decide at macro time whether to assemble certain code or not (conditional assembly). So, the assembler never has to see any code which is not to be assembled.

**Syntax:**

```plaintext
%IF( expression )
THEN
  (balanced-text1)
[ELSE
  (balanced-text2)]
FI
```

The IF function first evaluates the expression. If it is TRUE, then the succeeding balanced-text1 is expanded; if it is FALSE and the optional ELSE clause is included in the call, then the balanced-text2 is expanded. If the expression results to FALSE and the ELSE clause is not included, the IF call returns the null string. The macro call must be terminated by FI.

IF calls can be nested. The ELSE clause refers to the most recent IF call that is still open (not terminated by FI). FI terminates the most recent IF call that is still open. The level of macro nesting is limited to 300.

**Example:**

This is a simple example of the IF call with no ELSE clause:

```plaintext
%SET( VALUE, 0F0H )
%IF( %VALUE GE 0FFH )
THEN
  (MOV R1, #%VALUE)
FI
```
**Example:**

This is a simple form of the IF call with an ELSE clause:

```
%IF( %EQS(ADD,%OPERATION))
   THEN
       (ADD R7, #03H)
   ELSE
       (SUB R7, #03H)
FI
```

**Example:**

This is an example of three nested IF calls:

```
%IF( %EQS(%OPER,ADD)) THEN ( 
    ADD R1, #03H 
)ELSE (%IF( %EQS(%OPER,SUB)) THEN ( 
    SUB R1, #03H 
)ELSE (%IF( %EQS(%OPER,MUL)) THEN ( 
        MOV R1, #03 
        JMP MUL_LAB
    )ELSE ( 
        MOV R1, #DATUM 
        JMP DIV_LAB
    )FI 
)FI)
)FI
```

**Example:**

Demonstrating conditional assembly:

```
%SET(DEBUG,1)
%IF(%DEBUG)
   THEN ( 
       MOV R1, #%DEBUG 
       JMP DEBUG 
   )FI 
   MOV R1, R2 
   .
   .
   .
```

This expands to:
MACRO PREPROCESSOR

MOV R1, #%DEBUG
JMP DEBUG
MOV R1, R2

%SET can be changed to:

%SET (DEBUG, 0)

to turn off the debug code.

2.5.8.2 IFDEF/IFNDEF FUNCTION

The IFDEF built-in function tests if a macro is defined and the IFNDEF built-in function tests if a macro is not defined. Based on this test, the function expands or withholds its text arguments.

The IFDEF/IFNDEF function allows a user to decide at macro time whether to assemble certain code or not (conditional assembly). So, the assembler never has to see any code which is not to be assembled.

Syntax:

%IFDEF ( macro )
THEN
   (balanced-text1)
[ELSE
   (balanced-text2)]
FI

%IFNDEF ( macro )
THEN
   (balanced-text1)
[ELSE
   (balanced-text2)]
FI

The IFDEF and IFNDEF functions first test if macro is defined (IFDEF) or not (IFNDEF). If it is TRUE, then the succeeding balanced-text1 is expanded; if it is FALSE and the optional ELSE clause is included in the call, then the balanced-text2 is expanded. If the expression results to FALSE and the ELSE clause is not included, the IF call returns the null string. The macro call must be terminated by FI.
Macro Preprocessor

IFDEF/IFNDEF calls can be nested. The ELSE clause refers to the most recent IF call that is still open (not terminated by FI). FI terminates the most recent IF call that is still open. The level of macro nesting is limited to 300.

**Example:**

This is a simple example of the IFNDEF call with no ELSE clause:

```macro
%IFDEF(MODEL)
THEN ( 
%DEFINE(MODEL)(SMALL)
) FI
```

**Example:**

This is a simple form of the IFDEF call with an ELSE clause:

```macro
%IFDEF(DOADD)
THEN
(ADD R7, #03H)
ELSE
(SUB R7, #03H)
FI
```

### 2.5.8.3 WHILE FUNCTION

The IF macro is useful for implementing one kind of conditional assembly including or excluding lines of code in the source file. However, in many cases this is not enough. Often you may wish to perform macro operations until a certain condition is met. The built-in function WHILE provides this facility.

**Syntax:**

```macro
%WHILE( expression ) ( balanced-text )
```

The WHILE function evaluates the `expression`. If it results to TRUE, the `balanced-text` is expanded WHILE expands to the `null string`. Once the `balanced-text` has been expanded, the logical argument is retested and if it is still TRUE, the `balanced-text` is expanded again. This continues until the logical argument proves FALSE.
Since the macro continues processing until the expression is FALSE, the balanced-text should modify the expression, or else WHILE may never terminate.

A call to built-in function EXIT always terminates a WHILE macro. EXIT is described below.

The following example shows the common use of the WHILE macro:

Example:

\[
\%\text{SET}(\text{COUNTER}, 7) \\
\%\text{WHILE}( \%\text{COUNTER GT 0} ) \\
\{ \\
\text{MOV } R2, \%\text{COUNTER} \\
\text{MOV } @R1, R2 \\
\text{ADD } R1, \#2 \\
\%\text{SET}(\text{COUNTER}, \%\text{COUNTER} - 1) \\
\}
\]

This example uses the SET macro and a macro-time symbol to count the iterations of the WHILE macro.

### 2.5.8.4 REPEAT FUNCTION

mpp51 offers another built-in function that performs the counting loop automatically. The built-in function REPEAT expands its balanced-text a specified number of times.

**Syntax:**

\[
\%\text{REPEAT}( \text{expression} ) ( \text{balanced-text} )
\]

Unlike the IF and WHILE macros, REPEAT uses the expression for a numerical value that specifies the number of times the balanced-text should be expanded. The expression is evaluated once when the macro is first called, then the specified number of iterations is performed.

A call to built-in function EXIT always terminates a REPEAT macro. EXIT is described in the next section.
Example:

Lab:

    MOV A, #8
    MOV R2, #0FFFFH

    %REPEAT( 8 )
    ( MOV @R2, A
      ADD @R1, A
    )

2.5.8.5 EXIT FUNCTION

The built-in function EXIT terminates expansion of the most recently called user defined macro. It is most commonly used to avoid infinite loops (e.g. a recursive user defined macro that never terminates). It allows several exit points in the same macro.

Syntax:

    %EXIT

Example:

This use of EXIT terminates a recursive macro when an odd number of bytes have been added.

    %*DEFINE (MEM_ADD_MEM(SOURCE,DEST,BYTES))
    (   %IF( %BYTES LE 0 )THEN ( %EXIT ) FI
        ADD A, %SOURCE
        ADDC A, %DEST
        MOV %DEST, A
        %IF( %BYTES EQ 1 ) THEN ( %EXIT ) FI
        MOV A, %SOURCE+1
        ADDC A, %DEST+1
        MOV %DEST+1, A
        IF (%BYTES GT 2) THEN ( %MEM_ADD_MEM(%SOURCE+2,%DEST+2,%BYTES-2) ) FI
    )

The above example adds two pairs of bytes and stores results in DEST. As long as there is a pair of bytes to be added, the macro MEM_ADD_MEM is expanded. When BYTES reaches a value of 1 or 0, the macro is exited.
**Example:**

This EXIT is a simple jump out of a recursive loop:

```plaintext
%DEFINE (BODY)
(     MOV A,%MVAR
   %SET(MVAR, %MVAR + 1 )
 )

%DEFINE (UNTIL(CONDITION,EXE_BODY))
(     %EXE_BODY
     %IF( %CONDITION )
     THEN ( 
     %EXIT )
     ELSE ( 
     %UNTIL( %CONDITION, %EXE_BODY )
     )FI
 )

%SET(MVAR,0)
%UNTIL( %MVAR GT 3, %*BODY )
```

### 2.5.9 STRING MANIPULATION FUNCTIONS

The macro language contains three functions that perform common string manipulation functions, namely, the LEN, SUBSTR and MATCH function.

#### 2.5.9.1 LEN FUNCTION

The built-in function LEN takes a character string argument and returns the length of the character string in hexadecimal format (the same format as EVAL).

**Syntax:**

```
%LEN(balanced-text)
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before Macro Expansion</th>
<th>After Macro Expansion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%LEN(ABNCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ)</td>
<td>1bH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%LEN(A,B,C)</td>
<td>05H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%LEN( )</td>
<td>00H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%MATCH(STR1,STR2) (Cheese,Mouse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%LEN(%STR1)</td>
<td>06H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%LEN(%SUBSTR(%STR2, 1, 3 ))</td>
<td>03H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2.5.9.2 SUBSTR FUNCTION

The built-in function SUBSTR returns a substring of its text argument. The macro takes three arguments: a string from which the substring is to be extracted and two numeric arguments.

**Syntax:**

\[
%\text{SUBSTR}(\text{balanced-text}, \text{expression1}, \text{expression2})
\]

- `balanced-text` as described earlier. It may contain a macro call.
- `expression1` specifies the starting character of the substring.
- `expression2` specifies the number of characters to be included in the substring.

If `expression1` is zero or greater than the length of the argument string, SUBSTR returns the null string.

If `expression2` is zero, then SUBSTR returns the null string. If it is greater than the remaining length of the string, then all characters from the start character of the substring to the end of the string are included.

**Example:**

The examples below several calls to SUBSTR and the value returned:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before Macro Expansion</th>
<th>After Macro Expansion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%SUBSTR(ABCDEFG, 5, 1 )</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%SUBSTR(ABCDEFG, 5, 100 )</td>
<td>EFG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%SUBSTR(123(56)890, 4, 4 )</td>
<td>(56)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%SUBSTR(ABCDEFG, 8, 1 )</td>
<td>null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%SUBSTR(ABCDEFG, 3, 0 )</td>
<td>null</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.5.9.3 MATCH FUNCTION

The MATCH function primarily serves to define macro identifiers. The MATCH function searches a character string for a delimiter character and assigns the substrings on either side of the delimiter to the macro identifiers.

Syntax:

\[
\text{%MATCH(macro-id1 delimiter macro-id2) (balanced-text)}
\]

*balanced-text* as described earlier. It may contain a macro call.

*macro-id1* and *macro-id2* may be any valid mpp51 identifier.

*delimiter* is the first character to follow *macro-id1*. You can use a space or a comma or any other delimiter. See the Advanced mpp51 Concepts section for more information on delimiters.

MATCH searches the *balanced-text* for the first *delimiter*. When it is found, all characters to the left of it are assigned to *macro-id1* and all characters to the right are assigned to *macro-id2*. If the *delimiter* is not found, the entire *balanced-text* is assigned to *macro-id1* and the null string is assigned to *macro-id2*.

**Example:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{%MATCH(MS1,MS2) (ABC,DEF) } & \rightarrow \text{ MS1=ABC MS2=DEF} \\
\text{%MATCH(MS3,MS4) (GH,%MS1) } & \rightarrow \text{ MS3=GH MS4=ABC} \\
\text{%MATCH(MS5,MS6) (%LEN(%MS1)) } & \rightarrow \text{ MS5=03H MS6=null}
\end{align*}
\]

You can use the MATCH function for processing string lists as shown in the next example.

**Example:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{%MATCH(NEXT,LIST)(10H,20H,30H) } \\
\text{%WHILE(%LEN(%NEXT)) } \\
( & \text{ MOV A, %NEXT} \\
& \text{ ADD A, #2} \\
& \text{ MOV %NEXT, A} \\
& \text{ %MATCH(NEXT,LIST)(%LIST)} \\
) \end{align*}
\]

Produces the following code:

First iteration of WHILE:
MOV A, 10H  
ADD A, #2  
MOV 10H, A

Second iteration of WHILE:

MOV A, 20H  
ADD A, #2  
MOV 20H, A

Third iteration of WHILE:

MOV A, 30H  
ADD A, #2  
MOV 30H, A

2.5.10 MESSAGE FUNCTIONS

Two built-in functions, ERROR and FATAL can generate a user error or fatal error message.

Syntax:

\%ERROR(\textit{balanced-text})

\%FATAL(\textit{balanced-text})

You can use the ERROR function to trigger a user error 'E 100'. Macro preprocessing will continue after the ERROR function. The ERROR function expands to the \textit{null string}.

You can use the FATAL function to trigger a user fatal error 'F 101'. Macro preprocessing will stop directly after the FATAL function, and the program will exit with value 1. The FATAL function expands to the \textit{null string}.

Example:

\%IFNDEF(TEMP)  
THEN  
  (%ERROR(Macro TEMP not defined))  
ELSE  
  (%FATAL(Macro TEMP is defined))  
FI
2.5.11 FILE/LINE INFO FUNCTIONS

The macro preprocessor has two functions that are equivalent to ISO C predefined macros.

**Syntax:**

- `%__FILE__`
- `%__LINE__`

The __FILE__ macro is equivalent to the ISO C predefined macro, it translates into the name of the current source file.

The __LINE__ macro is equivalent to the ISO C predefined macro, it translates into the line number of the current source line.

**Example:**

```
%ERROR(Error in file %__FILE__ on line %__LINE__)
```

2.5.12 OPTION FUNCTION

You can use the OPTION function to trigger a command line option from within the source file.

**Syntax:**

```
%OPTION(command-line-option)
```

The command-line-option must be any valid command line option. The OPTION function itself is replaced with the null string.

**Example:**

The following command sets the prompt for the %IN function to "y/n: " from with the source:

```
%OPTION(--prompt=y/n: )
```
2.5.13 CONSOLE I/O FUNCTIONS

Two built-in functions, IN and OUT, perform console I/O. They are line-oriented. IN outputs the character ‘>’ as a prompt to the console (unless you specify another prompt with option --prompt), and returns the next line typed at the console including the line terminator. OUT outputs a string to the console; the return value of OUT is the null string.

The results of an IN call (of the input) is interpreted as a macro-string. IN can also be used everywhere, where a macro-string is allowed.

Syntax:

\%IN

\%OUT(balanced-text)

Example:

\%OUT(ENTER NUMBER OF PROCESSORS IN SYSTEM)
\%SET(Proc_COUNT,%IN)
\%OUT(ENTER THIS PROCESSOR’S ADDRESS)
ADDRESS SET %IN
\%OUT(ENTER BAUD RATE)
\%SET(BAUD,%IN)

The following lines would be displayed on the console:

ENTER NUMBER OF PROCESSORS IN SYSTEM
> user response
ENTER THIS PROCESSOR’S ADDRESS
> user response
ENTER BAUD RATE
> user response
2.6 ADVANCED MPP51 CONCEPTS

For most programming problems, mpp51 as described above, is sufficient. However, in some cases, a more complete description of the macro preprocessor’s function is necessary. It is impossible to describe all of the obscurities of the macro preprocessor in a single chapter. Specific questions to mpp51 can easily be answered by simple tests following the given rules.

2.6.1 MACRO DELIMITERS

Delimiters are used in the function DEFINE to separate the macro–name from the optional parameter–list and to separate different parameters in this parameter–list. In the MATCH function a delimiter is used to define a separator, which is used as kind of terminator in the corresponding balanced–text argument. The most commonly used delimiters are characters like parentheses and commas, but the macro language permits almost any character or group of characters to be used as a delimiter.

Regardless of the type of delimiter used to define a macro, once it has been defined, only the delimiters used in the definition can be used in the macro call. Macros defined with parentheses and commas require parentheses and commas in the macro call. Macros defined with spaces (or any other delimiter), require that delimiter when called.

Macro delimiters can be divided into three classes: implied blank delimiters, identifier delimiters, and literal delimiters.

2.6.1.1 IMPLIED BLANK DELIMITERS

Implied blank delimiters are the easiest to use and contribute the most readability and flexibility to macro definitions. An implied blank delimiter is one or more spaces, tabs or new lines (a carriage–return/linefeed pair) in any order. To define a macro that uses the implied blank delimiter, simply place one or more spaces, tabs, or new lines surrounding the parameter list and separating the formal parameters.

When you call the macro defined with the implied blank delimiter, each delimiter will match a series of spaces, tabs, or new lines. Each parameter in the call begins with the first non–blank character, and ends when a blank character is found.
Example:

\%*DEFINE(WORDS FIRST SECOND)(TEXT: %FIRST %SECOND)

All of the following calls are valid:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before Macro Expansion</th>
<th>After Macro Expansion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%WORDS hello world</td>
<td>TEXT: hello world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%WORDS one two</td>
<td>TEXT: one two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%WORDS well done</td>
<td>TEXT: well done</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.6.1.2 IDENTIFIER DELIMITERS

Identifier delimiters are legal macro identifiers designated as delimiters. To define a macro that uses an identifier delimiter in its call pattern, you must prefix the delimiter with the commercial at symbol '@'. You must separate the identifier delimiter from the macro identifiers by a blank character.

When calling a macro defined with identifier delimiters, an implied blank delimiter is required to precede the identifier delimiter, but none is required to follow the identifier delimiter.

Example:

\%*DEFINE(ADD M1 @TO M2 @AND M3)(
    MOV A, %M1
    ADD A, %M2
    MOV %M2, A
    MOV A, %M1
    ADD A, %M3
    MOV %M3, A
)

The following call (there is no blank after TO and AND):

%ADD ATOM TOBILL ANDLIST
returns the following code after expansion:

```
MOV A,ATOM
ADD A,BILL
MOV BILL,A
MOV A,ATOM
ADD A,LIST
MOV LIST,A
```

### 2.6.1.3 LITERAL DELIMITERS

The delimiters we used with the user-defined macros (parentheses and commas) were literal delimiters. A literal delimiter can be any character except the metacharacter.

When you define a macro using a literal delimiter, you must use exactly that delimiter when you call the macro.

When defining a macro, you must literalize the delimiter string, if the delimiter you wish to use meets any of the following conditions:

- uses more than one character,
- uses a macro identifier character (A–Z, , _, or ?),
- uses a commercial at (@),
- uses a space, tab, carriage-return, or linefeed,

You can use the escape function (%n) or the bracket function (%()) to literalize the delimiter string.

**Example:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before Macro Expansion</th>
<th>After Macro Expansion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%*DEFINE(MAC(A,B))(%A %B)</td>
<td>-&gt; null string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%MAC(2,3)</td>
<td>-&gt; 2 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the following example brackets are used instead of parentheses. The commercial at symbol separates the parameters:

```
%*DEFINE(OR[A%(@)B])(OR %A,%B) -> null string
%OR[A1@A2]                   -> OR A1,A2
```
In the next example, delimiters that could be identifier delimiters have been defined as literal delimiters:

\[
\%*\text{DEFINE}(\text{ADD}(A\%(\text{AND})B))(\text{AND} \ %A,%B) \rightarrow \text{null string}
\]

\[
\%\text{ADD} \ (A \ \text{AND} \ #34H) \rightarrow \text{AND} \ A, \ #27H
\]

The spaces around AND are considered as part of the argument string.

Next follows an example to demonstrate the difference between identifier delimiters and literal delimiters.

**Example:**

\[
\%*\text{DEFINE}(\text{ADD} \ M1\%(\text{TO})M2\%(\text{AND})M3)(
\quad \text{MOV} \ A,%M1 \\
\quad \text{ADD} \ A,%M2 \\
\quad \text{MOV} \ %M2,A \\
\quad \text{MOV} \ A,%M1 \\
\quad \text{ADD} \ A,%M3 \\
\quad \text{MOV} \ %M3,A
\quad )
\]

The following call:

\[
\%\text{ADD} \ \text{ATOM} \ \text{TOBILL} \ \text{ANDLIST}
\]

returns the following code after expansion (the TO in ATOM is recognized as the delimiter):

\[
\text{MOV} \ A,A \\
\text{ADD} \ A,M \ \text{TOBILL} \\
\text{MOV} \ M \ \text{TOBILL},A \\
\text{MOV} \ A,A \\
\text{ADD} \ A,\text{LIST} \\
\text{MOV} \ \text{LIST},A
\]
2.6.2 LITERAL VS. NORMAL MODE

In *normal mode*, the macro preprocessor scans text looking for the metacharacter. When it finds one, it begins expanding the macro call. Parameters and macro calls are expanded. This is the usual operation of the macro preprocessor, but sometimes it is necessary to modify this mode of operation. The most common use of the *literal mode* is to prevent macro expansion. The literal character in DEFINE prevents the expansion of macros in the macro–body until you call the macro.

When you place the literal character in a DEFINE call, the macro preprocessor shifts to literal mode while expanding the call. The effect is similar to surrounding the entire call with the bracket function. Parameters to the literalized call are expanded, the escape, comment, and bracket functions are also expanded, but no further processing is performed. If there are any calls to other, they are not expanded.

If there are no parameters in the macro being defined, the DEFINE built–in function can be called without the literal character. If the macro uses parameters, the macro will attempt to evaluate the formal parameters in the macro–body as parameterless macro calls.

**Example:**

The following example illustrates the difference between defining a macro in literal mode and normal mode:

```plaintext
%SET(TOM,1)

%DEFINE (M1)(
  %EVAL(%TOM)
)

%DEFINE (M2)(
  %EVAL(%TOM)
)
```

When M1 and M2 are defined, TOM is equal to 1. The macro–body of M1 has not been evaluated due to the literal character, but the macro–body of M2 has been completely evaluated, since the literal character is not used in the definition. Changing the value of TOM has no affect on M2, it changes the return value of M1 as illustrated below:
Before Macro Expansion | After Macro Expansion
---|---
%SET(TOM, 2) | -> 02H
%M1 | -> 01H
%M2 | 

The macros themselves can be called with the literal character. The return value then is the unexpanded body:

%-M2 | -> 01H
%-M1 | -> %EVAL(%TOM)

Sometimes it is necessary to obtain access to parameters by several macro levels. The literal mode is also used for this purpose. The following example assumes that the macro M1 called in the `macro–body` is predefined.

**Example:**

@*DEFINE (M2(P1))(  
MOV A,%P1  
%M1(%P1)  
)

In the above example, the formal parameter %P1 is used once as a simple place holder and once as an actual parameter for the macro M1.

Actual parameters in the contents must not be known in literal mode, since they are not expanded. If the definition of M2, however, occurred in normal mode, the macro preprocessor would try to expand the call from M1 and, therefore, the formal parameter %P1 (used as an actual parameter). However, this first receives its value when called from M2. If its contents happen to be undefined, an error message is issued.

Another application possibility for the literal mode exists for macro calls that are used as actual parameters (*macro–strings*, *macro–variables*, *macro–calls*).

**Example:**

%M1(%*M2)

The formal parameter of M1 was assigned the call from M2 ("%M2") by its expansion. M2 is expanded from M1 when the formal parameters are processed.
In normal mode, M2 is expanded in its actual parameter list immediately when called from M1. The formal parameters of M1 in its body are replaced by the prior expanded *macro-body* from M2.

The following example shows the different use of macros as actual parameters in the literal and normal mode.

**Example:**

```
%SET(M2, 1)

%*DEFINE (M1(P1))(  
  %SET(M2, %M2 + 1)  
  %M2, %P1
)

%M1(%M2)        -> 02H, 02H
%M1(%M2)        -> 03H, 02H
%M1(%M2)        -> 04H, 04H
```

### 2.6.3 ALGORITHM FOR EVALUATING MACRO CALLS

The algorithm of the macro preprocessor used for evaluating the source file can be broken down into 6 steps:

1. Scan the input stream until the metacharacter is found.
2. Isolate the *macro-name*.
3. If macro has parameters, expand each parameter from left to right (initiate step one on actual parameter), before expanding the next parameter.
4. Substitute actual parameters for formal parameters in *macro-body*.
5. If the literal character is not used, initiate step one on *macro-body*.
6. Insert the result into output stream.

The terms ‘input stream’ and ‘output stream’ are used because the return value of one macro may be a parameter to another. On the first iteration, the input stream is the source line. On the final iteration, the output stream is passed to the assembler.
Example:

The examples below illustrate the macro preprocessor's evaluation algorithm:

\%SET(TOM, 3)

\%*DEFINE (STEVE)(\%SET(TOM, \%TOM - 1) \%TOM)

\%DEFINE (ADAM(A, B))(
   DB \%A, \%B, \%A, \%B, \%A, \%B
)

The call ADAM is presented here in the normal mode with TOM as the first actual parameter and STEVE as the second actual parameter. The first parameter is completely expanded before the second parameter is expanded. After the call to ADAM has been completely expanded, TOM will have the value 02H.

Before Macro Expansion      After Macro Expansion

\%ADAM(\%TOM, \%STEVE)   -> DB 03H, 02H, 03H, 02H, 03H, 02H

Now reverse the order of the two actual parameters. In this call to ADAM, STEVE is expanded first (and TOM is decremented) before the second parameter is evaluated. Both parameters have the same value.

\%SET(TOM, 3)
\%ADAM(\%STEVE, \%TOM)   -> DB 02H, 02H, 02H, 02H, 02H

Now we will literalize the call to STEVE when it appears as the first actual parameter. This prevents STEVE from being expanded until it is inserted in the macro-body, then it is expanded for each replacement of the formal parameters. TOM is evaluated before the substitution in the macro-body.

\%SET(TOM, 3)
\%ADAM(\%*STEVE, \%TOM)   -> DB 02H, 03H, 01H, 03H, 00H, 03H
3.1 DESCRIPTION

The 8051 assembler **asm51** is a three pass program:

Pass 1  
Reads the source file and performs lexical actions such as evaluating equate statements. This pass will generate an intermediate token file.

Pass 2  
Performs optimization of jump instructions.

Pass 3  
Generates machine code and list file.

Because of the three passes, the assembler can perform optimizations for the generic jump and call instructions (jmp/call), even with forward references.

File inclusion and macro facilities are not integrated into the assembler. Rather, they are provided by the macro preprocessor **mpp51**, which is supplied as a separate program. The assembler can be used with or without the **mpp51** macro preprocessor. Alternatively, another macro preprocessor, such as a standard C-preprocessor may be used.

3.2 INVOCATION

The command line invocation of **asm51** is:

```
asm51 [option]... source-file [control]...
```

When you use a UNIX shell (**C-shell**, **Bourne shell**), controls containing special characters (such as `( )`) must be enclosed with `" "`. The invocations for UNIX and PC are the same, except for the `–?` option in the **C-shell**:

```
asm51 “–?” or asm51 –?
```

Invocation with `–V` only displays a version header, `–?` shows the invocation syntax.
The **asm51** assembler requires the source file name to be its first argument. This file contains assembly code which is either hand written, generated by **cc51** or processed by **mpp51**. Any name is allowed for this file. If this name does not have an extension, the extension `.src` is assumed. The remaining arguments on the invocation line are considered assembler controls which are processed before the first source line is read. For a description of all possible controls, please refer to the chapter on assembler controls.

In the default situation, an object file with extension `.obj` and a list file with extension `.lst` are produced. With appropriate assembler controls it is possible to suppress these files, or give them another name. Error messages are written to the terminal, unless they are directed to an error list file with the `$errorprint()` assembler control.

### 3.3 ASM51 OPTIONS

The assembler recognizes the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-?</td>
<td>Display invocation syntax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Ccpu</td>
<td>Use special function register definitions for cpu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Idirectory</td>
<td>Look in directory for the .sfr file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-V</td>
<td>Display version header only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 3–1: Options summary*

A detailed description of the option is given below.

With options that can be set from within EDE, you will find a mouse icon that describes the corresponding action.
Option:
  `-?`

Description:
  Display an explanation of the invocation syntax at `stdout`.

Example:
  `asm51  -?`
-C

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Processor entry and select Processor Selection. Choose a processor from the list of derivatives or select User specified CPU and enter your own processor type.

-C cpu

Arguments:

The cpu name which identifies your 8051 derivative.

Description:

Use special function register definitions for cpu. The filename looked for is "regcpu.sfr".

With the -I option you can specify an alternative directory to look for the .sfr file.

Example:

To specify to the assembler to look for a file named regp87c1881.sfr, and to use this file as a special function register definition file, enter:

```
asm51 -Cp87c1181 test.src
```

-I
From the **Project** menu, select **Directories...** Add one or more directory paths to the **Include Files Path** field.

**Option:**

- **-I** *directory*

**Arguments:**

The name of the directory to search for the `.sfr` file.

**Description:**

Specify alternative directories to search for `.sfr` files. First the path specified with the `-I` option is searched. If the `.sfr` file is not found, the directory `.\include` relative to the directory where the assembler binary is located is searched.

With the `-C` option you can specify the `.sfr` file which should be used.

**Example:**

```
asm51 -I\proj\include test.asm
```

- **-C**
-V

Option:
- V

Description:
With this option you can display the version header of the assembler. This option must be the only argument of `asm51`. Other options are ignored. The assembler exits after displaying the version header.

Example:
```
asm51 -V
```

```
TASKING 8051 assembler      vx.yrz Build nnn
Copyright years Altium BV    Serial# 00000000
```
3.4 SEGMENTS AND MEMORY ALLOCATION

A segment is a logical piece of code or data which will be assigned to physical memory as a single block. Every segment has a name, a memory type (CODE, DATA, IDATA, XDATA or BIT) and possibly some segment attributes. There are two types of segments: relocatable segments and absolute segments.

The assembler can handle up to 253 different segments in a module. Each module consists of at least one segment. Segments in different modules, but with the same name will be combined into one segment by the linker. The resulting number of segments the linker generates may not exceed 1250.
An assembly program consists of zero or more statements, one statement per line. A statement may optionally be followed by a comment, which is introduced by a semicolon (;) and terminated by the end of the input line.

Lines starting with a dollar character ($) in the first column are control lines. They are interpreted independently from the rest of the input. The syntax of these lines is described separately in the chapter Assembler Controls.

A line with a # character in the first position is a line generated by a macro preprocessor to inform the assembler of the original source file name and line number. The format of the remaining lines is given below. A statement can be defined as:

\[
[\text{label:}] \ [\text{instruction} \ | \ \text{directive}] \ [\; \text{comment}]
\]

where,

- **label** is an identifier. The occurrence of label: defines the symbol denoted by label and assigns the current value of the location counter to it.

  identifier can be up to 80 characters, made up of letters, digits, underscore characters (_) and/or question marks (?). The first character may not be a digit.

  Example:

  \[
  \text{LAB1: ;This is a label}
  \]

- **instruction** is any valid 8051 assembly language instruction consisting of a mnemonic and one, two, three or no operands. Operands are described in the chapter Operands and Expressions. The instructions are described separately in the chapter 8051 Family Instruction Set.

  Examples:

  \[
  \text{RETI } \quad ; \text{No operand}
  \text{INC @R0 } \quad ; \text{One operand}
  \text{AND A, @R0 } \quad ; \text{Two operands}
  \text{CJNE @R1,#01,LAB1 } \quad ; \text{Three operands}
  \]

- **directive** any one of the assembler directives; described separately in the chapter Assembler Directives.

  A statement may be empty.
5.1 INTRODUCTION

Assembler controls are provided to alter the default behavior of the assembler. They can be specified on the command line or on 'control lines', embedded in the source file. A control line is a line with a dollar sign (\$) on the first position. Such a line is not processed like a normal assembly source line, but as an assembler control line. Zero or more controls per source line are allowed. An assembler control line may contain comments.

The controls are classified as: primary or general.

**Primary controls** affect the overall behavior of the assembler and remain in effect throughout the assembly. For this reason, primary controls may only be used on the command line or at the beginning of a source file, before the assembly starts. If you specify a primary control more than once, a warning message is given and the last definition is used. This enables you to override primary controls via the invocation line.

**General controls** are used to control the assembler during assembly. Control lines containing general controls may appear anywhere in a source file and are also allowed on the command line. When you specify general controls via the command line the corresponding general controls in the source file are ignored.

The controls GEN, NOGEN, GENONLY and INCLUDE are implemented in the macro preprocessor. If one of these controls is encountered, the assembler generates a warning.

On the next pages, an overview is given of all the assembler controls, followed by a detailed description the available assembler controls, listed in alphabetic order. Some controls have separate versions for turning an option on and off. These controls are described together.

Some controls are set by default, and some controls have a default value.

The examples in this chapter are given for the PC environment.
### 5.2 OVERVIEW ASM51 CONTROLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Abbr.</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Def.</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ASMLINEINFO</td>
<td>AL</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generate source line information for assembly files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BYPASS(number)</td>
<td>BP</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bypass CPU functional problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASE NOCASE</td>
<td>CA NOCA</td>
<td>pri pri</td>
<td>NOCA</td>
<td>All user names are case sensitive. User names are not case sensitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE(date-string)</td>
<td>DA</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>spaces</td>
<td>Set date in header of list file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEBUG NODEBUG</td>
<td>DB NODB</td>
<td>pri pri</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Produce symbolic debug information. Do not produce symbolic debug info.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEBUGINFO(number)</td>
<td>DI</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td>033H</td>
<td>Specify amount of debug info.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EJECT</td>
<td>EJ</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generate formfeed in list file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERRORPRINT(err-file)</td>
<td>EP NOEP</td>
<td>pri pri</td>
<td>NOEP</td>
<td>Print errors to named file. No error printing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN GENONLY NOGEN</td>
<td>GE GO NOGE</td>
<td>gen gen</td>
<td>Implemented with macro processor(^1) Implemented with macro processor(^1) Implemented with macro processor(^1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCLUDE/inc-file</td>
<td>IC</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td></td>
<td>Implemented with macro processor(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST NOLIST</td>
<td>LI NOLI</td>
<td>gen gen</td>
<td>LI</td>
<td>Resume listing. Stop listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LISTALL NOLISTALL</td>
<td>LA NOLA</td>
<td>pri pri</td>
<td>NOLA</td>
<td>List in every pass. Do not list in every pass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MACRO NOMACRO</td>
<td>MR NOMR</td>
<td>pri pri</td>
<td>Implemented with macro processor(^1) Implemented with macro processor(^1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MESSAGE(string)</td>
<td>MSG</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td></td>
<td>Programmer generated message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOD51 NOMOD51</td>
<td>MO NOMO</td>
<td>gen gen</td>
<td>MO</td>
<td>Use predefined register names. Predefined list not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOEXTERNALMEMORY</td>
<td>NOEM</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td></td>
<td>Assemble for derivatives without external memory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbr.: Abbreviation of the control.  
Type: Type of control: pri for primary controls, gen for general controls.  
Def.: Default.  
\(^1\) This control is only implemented for compatibility, the assembler will ignore the control.

---

*Table 5-1: asm51 controls*
### Assembler Controls

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Abbr.</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Def.</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT[(file)] NOOBJECT</td>
<td>OJ NOOJ</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>src.obj</td>
<td>Alternative name for object file. Do not produce an object file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPTIMIZE NOOPTIMIZE</td>
<td>OP NOOP</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td>OP</td>
<td>Turn optimization on. Turn optimization off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGELENGTH(length)</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Set list page length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGEWIDTH(width)</td>
<td>PW</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>Set list page width.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGING NOPAGING</td>
<td>PI NOPI</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>PI</td>
<td>Format print file into pages. Do not format print file into pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRINT[(print-file)] NOPRINT</td>
<td>PR NOPR</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>src.lst</td>
<td>Define print file name. Do not create a print file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGISTERBANK(rb[,...])</td>
<td>RB NORB</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Specify register banks used. Reserve no memory for register banks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTORE SAVE</td>
<td>RE SA</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td>Restore saved listing control. Save listing control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGADDR NOREGADDR</td>
<td>RA NORA</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td>Allow/disallow operands to refer to an absolute register address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMALLROM</td>
<td>SR</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td></td>
<td>Application fits in one 2K byte block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYMBOLS NOSYMBOLS</td>
<td>SB NOSB</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>Not implemented; causes a warning. Not implemented; causes a warning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE(title)</td>
<td>TT</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td>spaces</td>
<td>Set list page header title.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WORKFILES(drives)</td>
<td>WF</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ignored¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XREF NOXREF</td>
<td>XR NOXR</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>pri</td>
<td>Not implemented; causes a warning. Not implemented; causes a warning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbr.:** Abbreviation of the control.  
**Type:** Type of control: pri for primary controls, gen for general controls.  
**Def.:** Default.  
¹ This control is only implemented for compatibility, the assembler will ignore the control.

*Table 5-1: *asm51* controls (continued)*
5.3 DESCRIPTION OF ASM51 CONTROLS

With controls that can be set from within EDE, you will find a mouse icon that describes the corresponding action.

ASMLINEINFO

Control:

Asmlineinfo

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Miscellaneous. Enable the option Generate source line information for assembly files.

Abbreviation:

AL

Class:

General

Default:

-

Description:

ASMLINEINFO results in high level language source line information being generated for the assembly source. This way assembly source can be shown in a debugger allowing stepping through the source as if it is a C module. You can only use this control when the DEBUG control is in effect.

ASMLINEINFO switches off the handling of ?SYMB and ?LINE directives. Setting DEBUGINFO to a value enabling ?SYMB or ?LINE will on the other hand switch off this control. Thus setting this control on a C module already containing symbolic debug will have no effect.

Example:

asm51 debug.src ASMLINEINFO
; generate source line information
**BYPASS**

**Control:**

BYPASS(*number*)

![Tip icon] From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options**... Expand the **Processor** entry and select **Bypasses**. Enable the option **Bypass DS80C390 erratum #6 (DIV AB preceded by ACC access)**.

**Abbreviation:**

BP

**Class:**

Primary

**Default:**

–

**Description:**

Enable bypass for certain CPU functional problems.

*number* is the TASKING chip erratum bypass number. Bypass *number* 1 bypasses DS80C390 erratum #6, and inserts an extra NOP before any DIV AB instruction.

**Example:**

To bypass DS80C390 erratum #6, enter:

```
asm51 test.src bp(1)
```
CASE

Control:

CASE / NOCASE

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Miscellaneous. Enable the option Case sensitive assembly.

Abbreviation:

CA / NOCA

Class:

Primary

Default:

NOCASE

Description:

Selects whether the assembler operates in case sensitive mode or not. In case insensitive mode the assembler maps characters on input to uppercase. (literal strings excluded).

Example:

asm51 x.src case ; asm51 in case sensitive mode
DATE

Control:

DATE(date-string)

From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...** Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **List File**. Enter the *date-string* in the **Date in header of listing file** field.

Abbreviation:

DA

Class:

Primary

Default:

spaces

Description:

**asm51** uses the specified date-string as the date in the header of the list file. Only the first 11 characters of *date-string* are used. If less than 11 characters are present, **asm51** pads them with blanks.

Examples:

; Jul 08 2002 in header of list file
asm51 x.src date(Jul 08 2002)

; 08-07-2002 in header of list file
asm51 x.src da(08-07-2002)
DEBUG

Control:

DEBUG / NODEBUG

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Miscellaneous. Enable or disable the option Generate symbolic debug information.

Abbreviation:

DB / NODB

Class:

Primary

Default:

DEBUG

Description:

Controls the generation of debugging information in the object file. DEBUG enables the generation of debugging information and NODEBUG disables it. When DEBUG is set, the amount of symbolic debug information is determined by the DEBUGINFO control.

Example:

asm51 x.src db ; generate debug information
DEBUGINFO

Control:

DEBUGINFO(number)

Abbreviation:

DI

Class:

General

Default:

DEBUGINFO(033H)

Description:

DEBUGINFO specifies the amount of symbolic debug information which is generated when DEBUG is in effect. Each bit in number (hex. or octal representation) corresponds to a different type of information, according to the list below. The default settings are shown in parentheses:

- bit 0: (1) public symbols
- bit 1: (1) local symbols
- bit 2: (0) compiler generated labels
- bit 3: (0) not used
- bit 4: (1) ?SYMB records
- bit 5: (1) ?LINE and ?FILE records
- bit 6: (0) not used
- bit 7: (0) not used

You can only use this control when the DEBUG control is in effect.

Example:

; source lines
$di(037H) ; also generate debug information
           ; for compiler generated labels
           .
           .
**EJECT**

**Control:**

EJECT

**Abbreviation:**

EJ

**Class:**

General

**Default:**

New page started when page length is reached

**Description:**

The current page is terminated with a formfeed after the current (control) line, the page number is incremented and a new page is started. Ignored if NOPAGING, NOPRINT or NOLIST is in effect.

**Example:**

```assembly
. ; assembler source lines
.
$eject ; generate a formfeed
.
. ; more source lines
$ej ; generate a formfeed
.
.
```
ERRORPRINT

Control:
ERRORPRINT(file) / NOERRORPRINT

Abbreviation:
EP / NOEP

Class:
Primary

Default:
NOERRORPRINT

Description:
ERRORPRINT redirects the error messages, normally displayed at the console, to an error list file.

Examples:
asm51 x.src ep(errlist) ; redirect errors to
; file errlist
GEN/GENONLY/NOGEN

Control:

GEN / GENONLY / NOGEN

Abbreviation:

GE / GO / NOGE

Class:

General

Default:

-

Description:

These controls are ignored, since the macro preprocessor is not integrated with the assembler. They are included for compatibility.
INCLUDE

Control:
    INCLUDE(file)

Abbreviation:
    IC

Class:
    General

Default:
    -

Description:
    The INCLUDE control is interpreted by the macro preprocessor, and will be deleted when the include is performed. When this control is recognized by the assembler, it causes an error message because the user apparently forgot to run the source through the macro preprocessor.
LIST

Control:
LIST / NOLIST

Abbreviation:
LI / NOLI

Class:
General

Default:
LIST

Description:
Switch the listing generation on or off. These controls take effect starting at the next line. LIST does not override the NOPRINT control.

Example:
$noli ; Turn listing off. These lines are not present in the list file
.
.
$list ; Turn listing back on. These lines are present in the list file
.
.

LISTALL

Control:
LISTALL / NOLISTALL.

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select List File. Enable or disable the option Generate listing in every pass.

Abbreviation:
LA / NOLA

Class:
Primary

Default:
NOLISTALL

Description:
The LISTALL control causes a listing to be generated in every pass of the assembler instead of just in pass 3. This can be useful for getting a listing with error messages, even when the assembler does not perform pass 3 due to errors occurring in pass 1 or 2. LISTALL overrules a following NOPRINT. PRINT is only effective when it is specified before LISTALL.

Example:
asm51 x.src listall ;generate listing in every ;pass of the assembler
MACRO

Control:
MACRO / NOMACRO

Abbreviation:
MR / NOMR

Class:
Primary

Default:
–

Description:
These controls are ignored; macro expansion is done by the preprocessor. Included for compatibility.
MESSAGE

Control:

MESSAGE(string)

Abbreviation:

MSG

Class:

General

Default:

-

Description:

With this control you tell the assembler to print a message on stdout during the assembling process. This is for example useful in combination with conditional assembly to indicate which part is assembled.

Examples:

$MESSAGE(Assembling)

$MSG(Using the abbreviated control)
MOD51

Control:

MOD51 / NOMOD51

Abbreviation:

MO / NOMO

Class:

General

Default:

MOD51

Description:

The ASM51 assembler uses a list of predefined register-names. With NOMOD51 the list will not be used by the assembler.

Example:

asm51 x.src nomod51

; use no predefined list of register names
NOEXTERNALMEMORY

Control:

NOEXTERNALMEMORY

* From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...** Expand the **Processor** entry and select **Memory**. Disable the option **External memory access allowed**.

Abbreviation:

NOEM

Class:

Primary

Default:

-

Description:

Certain derivatives like the 8xC751 have no external memory support and therefore do not allow the MOVX instruction. With this control an error message is issued whenever a MOVX instruction is encountered.

Examples:

```
asm51 test.src NOEXTERNALMEMORY

; issue error on MOVX instruction
```
OBJECT

Control:

OBJECT[(file)] / NOOBJECT

Abbreviation:

OJ / NOOJ

Class:

Primary

Default:

OBJECT(sourcefile.obj)

Description:

The OBJECT control specifies an alternative name for the object file. The NOOBJECT control causes no object file to be generated.

Examples:

asm51 x.src          ; generate object file x.obj
asm51 x.src oj(x1)   ; generate object file x1
asm51 x.src nooj     ; do not generate object file
OPTIMIZE

Control:

OPTIMIZE / NOOPTIMIZE

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Miscellaneous. Enable or disable the option Optimize forward generic JMP/CALL instructions.

Abbreviation:

OP / NOOP

Class:

General

Default:

OPTIMIZE

Description:

NOOPTIMIZE turns off the optimization for forward generic jmp and call instructions. Normally the assembler tries to select a sjmp, ajmp or acall instruction for a generic jmp/call in an absolute or relocatable INBLOCK segment, even with forward references. If the optimization is turned off, a forward generic jmp is always translated to an ljmp and call is translated to lcall.

Example:

$noop
; turn optimization off
; source lines

$op
; turn optimization back on
; source lines
PAGELENGTH

Control:

PAGELENGTH(lines)

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select List File. Enter the length in the Page length (lines per page) field.

Abbreviation:

PL

Class:

Primary

Default:

PAGELENGTH(60)

Description:

Sets the maximum number of lines on one page of the listing file. This number does not include the lines used by the page header (4), but it does include lines with error messages.

Example:

asm51 x.src pl(50) ; set page length to 50
PAGEWIDTH

Control:

PAGEWIDTH(characters)

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select List File. Enter the number of characters in the Page width (characters per line) field.

Abbreviation:

PW

Class:

Primary

Default:

PAGEWIDTH(104)

Description:

Sets the maximum number of characters on one line in the listing. Lines exceeding this width are wrapped around on the next lines in the listing. The valid range for the PAGEWIDTH control is 64 – 255. Although greater values for this control are not rejected by the assembler, lines are truncated if they exceed the length of 255.

Example:

asm51 x.src pw(130)

; set page width to 130 characters
PAGING

Control:

PAGING / NOPAGING

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select List File. Enable or disable the option Format listing file into pages.

Abbreviation:

PI / NOPI

Class:

Primary

Default:

PAGING

Description:

Turn the generation of formfeeds and page headers in the listing file on or off. If paging is turned off, the EJECT control is ignored.

Example:

asm51 x.src nopi

; turn paging off: no formfeeds and page headers
PRINT

Control:

PRINT[(file)] / NOPRINT

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select List File. Enable or disable the option Generate list file (.lst).

Abbreviation:

PR / NOPR

Class:

Primary

Default:

PRINT(sourcefile.lst)

Description:

The PRINT control specifies an alternative name for the listing file. The NOPRINT control causes no listing file to be generated. NOPRINT overrules a following LISTALL.

Examples:

asm51 x.src ; list file name is x.lst
asm51 x.src pr(mylist) ; list file name is mylist
REGADDR

Control:

REGADDR / NOREGADDR

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select Miscellaneous. Disallow use of absolute register addresses by specifying NOREGADDR in the Additional assembler controls field.

Abbreviation:

RA / NORA

Class:

General

Default:

REGADDR

Description:

The NOREGADDR control disallows the use of absolute register addresses as instruction operands. By default absolute registers, like AR0, are allowed as operands.

Examples:

$ra
  mov R1,AR2  ; valid assembly instruction
$nora
  mov R0,AR7  ; AR7 not allowed -> assembler error 96
**REGISTERBANK**

**Control:**

\[
\text{REGISTERBANK}(rb[,rb]...) / \text{NOREGISTERBANK}
\]

From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...** Expand the **Assembler** entry and select **Miscellaneous**. Specify a register bank by enabling the corresponding **Register bank** option.

**Abbreviation:**

RB / NORB

**Class:**

Primary

**Default:**

REGISTERBANK(0)

**Description:**

Specifies the register banks used in the current source module. This information is used by the linker to allocate the memory containing the register banks. NORB specifies that no memory is initially reserved for register banks. The USING assembler directive also reserves register banks.

**Examples:**

\[
\text{asm51 x.src } rb(0,1,2) \quad ; \text{reserve register banks}
\]

; 0, 1 and 2
SAVE/RESTORE

Control:
SAVE / RESTORE

Abbreviation:
SA / RS

Class:
General

Default:
-

Description:
SAVE stores the current value of the LIST/NOLIST controls onto a stack. RESTORE restores the most recently SAVEd value; it takes effect starting at the next line. SAVEs can be nested to a depth of 16.

Example:
$nolist
; source lines
$save  ; save values of LIST/NOLIST

$list

$restore  ; restore value (nolist)
SMALLROM

Control:

SMALLROM

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Processor entry and select Memory. Enable the option ROM size limited to 2K byte (no LCALLs).

Abbreviation:

SR

Class:

Primary

Default:

-

Description:

When an application fits in a 2K byte block (or no more ROM is supported) LCALLs and LJMPs can be translated into shorter ACALL and AJMP calls. With this control the conversion will be done automatically. You can also use this control for derivatives (like the 80C751/752) that do not support the LCALL instruction.

Example:

```plaintext
asm51 test.src SMALLROM

; translate LCALL/LJMP to ACALL/AJMP
```
SYMBOLS

Control:
  SYMBOLS / NOSYMBOLS

Abbreviation:
  SB / NOSB

Class:
  Primary

Default:
  –

Description:
  Not implemented; causes a warning message.
TITLE

Control:

TITLE(title)

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Assembler entry and select List File. Enter the title in the Title of listing file field.

Abbreviation:

TT

Class:

General

Default:

spaces

Description:

Sets the title which is to be used in the page headings of the list file. To ensure that the title is printed in the header of the first page, the control has to be specified in the first source line. The title string is truncated to 60 characters. If the page width is too small for the title to fit in the header, it will be truncated even further.

Example:

$title(NEWTITLE)

; title in page header is NEWTITLE
WORKFILES

Control:
   WORKFILES(d{

Abbreviation:
   WF

Class:
   Primary

Default:
   -

Description:
   Ignored, included for compatibility only.
XREF

Control:
    XREF / NOXREF

Abbreviation:
    XR / NOXR

Class:
    Primary

Default:
    –

Description:
    Not implemented; causes a warning message.
CHAPTER 6

OPERANDS AND EXPRESSIONS
6.1 OPERANDS

An operand is the part of the instruction that follows the instruction opcode. There can be one, two or even no operands in an instruction. The operands of the assembly instruction can be divided into the following six classes:

- Register names – A, AB, C, DPTR, PC, R0–R7
- Indirect addresses – @R0, @R1, @A or @DPTR.
- Immediate data
- (Internal) Data Addresses
- Bit Addresses
- Code Addresses

Operands of the last four classes are expressions evaluating into a number. Depending on the instruction, the number is interpreted as a plain number or as an address. The expression may have an associated 'segment type', which is used by the assembler to perform type checking. The segment types correspond with the available address spaces of the 8051 processor:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>bit address space (on-chip)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE</td>
<td>code address space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>direct addressable data (on-chip)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDATA</td>
<td>indirect addressable space (on-chip)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XDATA</td>
<td>external address space</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 6–1: Segment memory types*

Additionally, the segment type NUMBER is used for expressions representing a typeless number. If the expression can be completely evaluated at assembly time, it is called an absolute expression; if it is not, it is called a relocatable expression. See the section *Expressions* for more details.
6.1.1 OPERANDS AND ADDRESSING MODES

6.1.1.1 INDIRECT ADDRESSING

In an instruction using indirect addressing, the operand does not directly specify the memory address used in the operation. Rather, a register is specified whose contents is used to access the required data. Indirect addressing is specified with the @ character before the register name.

In most instructions, indirect addresses affect on–chip RAM. However, the MOVC and MOVX instructions use an indirect address operand to address code memory and external data memory, respectively.

In on–chip indirect addressing (IDATA addressing space), either register R0 or R1 can be specified as an indirect address operand. On the 8051 the address contained in the specified register must be between 0 and 127 (since you cannot access hardware registers through indirect addressing.) If an indirect address register contains a value greater than 127 when it is used as a source operand, a byte containing undefined data is returned. If it is used as destination operand, the data is lost. Processors supporting IDATA above 127 (e.g. 8052, 80C552) will execute these instructions as expected.

In the MOVX instruction, the 16 bit DPTR register is used as indirect address register to access external data space. The registers R0 and R1 can be used within a 256 byte 'page' of external RAM, since the high word of the address (P2) is not influenced by these instructions.

6.1.1.2 IMMEDIATE DATA

An immediate operand is an 8 or 16 bit number, which is encoded as part of the instruction. Immediate operands are indicated by the # character before the expression defining the value of the operand.

Most instructions with immediate operands, require the operand to fit into a byte. The value of the expression must be in the range of −256 to +255, thus must be representable with 9 bits. The lower 8 bits of this value is used in the instruction.
Immediate data operands do not require any specific segment type. Operands of type XDATA and IDATA can not be used as immediate operand. Data in these address spaces can be accessed only by first loading the address into a register, and then using indirect addressing.

6.1.1.3 DATA ADDRESSING

A data address operand is an expression specifying one of the 128 on-chip RAM locations or one of the hardware locations. Addresses 0–127 access the internal RAM and addresses 128–255 access the hardware registers. The value of the expression must be in the range of −256 to +255.

Note that it is not possible to access the hardware registers using indirect addressing. Indirect addressing with an address above 127, will access IDATA space rather that the hardware register space if the processor type involved supports IDATA in this range.

6.1.1.4 BIT ADDRESSING

A bit address represents a bit-addressable location in bytes 32 through 47 of the internal RAM, or a bit in one of the bit-addressable hardware registers. You can specify a bit address by giving the bit number explicitly. The expression now represents the bit address in bit space. The segment type of the expression should be BIT or NUMBER. Alternatively, you can select one bit of a bit-addressable byte with the bit selection operator (\(\cdot\)). The segment type of the expression denoting the byte should be DATA or NUMBER. If the byte is in a relocatable DATA segment, the segment must have the BITADDRESSABLE attribute.

Bit addresses 0 through 127 map onto bytes 32 through 47 of the on-chip RAM, bits 128 through 255 map onto the hardware registers whose addresses are divisible by 8.
6.1.1.5 CODE ADDRESSING

A code address is an expression with a value in the range of 0 through 65535, specifying an address in the code space. The segment type of a code address expression should be CODE or NUMBER. There are three types of instructions requiring a code address in their operands. They are relative jumps, in-block (2K page) jumps or calls, and long jumps or calls. The long jump/call instructions accept any code address as their operand, but the other instructions impose restrictions on the code address.

For relative jumps, a signed 8 bit offset is encoded in the instruction, so the code address must be within −128 to +127 bytes from the first byte of the following instruction.

For in-block jumps and calls, the lower 11 bits of the destination address are encoded into the instruction, so the address must be within the same 2K-page as the next instruction.

The assembler provides yet another type of jump and call instruction: the generic jump and call. The mnemonics jmp and call are recognized by the assembler although they are not 8051 instructions. The assembler replaces jmp by an sjmp, ajmp or ljmp, and call by an acall or lcall, depending on the destination address. The assembler selects the shortest instruction possible, provided that the difference between the current location and the destination address can be calculated at assembly time.

Note that this jmp/call optimization can be turned off with the NOOPTIMIZE control. In that case, all generic instructions are translated into the long form.
6.2 EXPRESSIONS

An operand of an assembler instruction or directive is either an assembler symbol or an expression. The assembler symbols for the 8051 are: A, AB, C, DPTR, PC and R0 to R7. An expression denotes an address in a particular memory space or a number. Expressions that can be evaluated at assembly time are called absolute expressions. Expressions where the result can not be known until logical sections have been combined and located are called relocatable expressions.

The syntax of an expression can be any of the following:

- number
- expression_string
- symbol
- $
- expression\ binary\_operator\ expression$
- unary\_operator\ expression
- ( expression )

All types of expressions are explained below and in following sections.

$ \text{represents the current location counter value in the section currently active.}$

( ) You can use parentheses to control the evaluation order of the operators. What is between parentheses is evaluated first.

**Examples:**

\[
(3+4)\times5 \quad ;\ \text{Result is 35.}
\]
\[
3+(4\times5) \quad ;\ \text{Result is 23.}
\]

; 3 + 4 is evaluated first.

; 4 * 5 is evaluated first.

; parentheses are superfluous

; here
6.2.1 NUMBER

*number* can be one of the following:

- *bin_num*B
- *dec_num* (or *dec_num*D)
- *oct_num*O (or *oct_num*Q)
- *hex_num*H

Lowercase equivalences are allowed: b, d, t, o, q, h.

*bin_num* is a binary number formed of '0'-'1' ending with a 'B' or 'b'.

**Examples:** 1001B; 1011B; 01100100b;

*dec_num* is a decimal number formed of '0'-'9', optionally followed by the letter 'D' or 'd'.

**Examples:** 12; 5978D;

*oct_num* is an octal number formed of '0'-'7' ending with an 'O', 'o', 'Q' or 'q'.

**Examples:** 11O; 447o; 30146q

*hex_num* is a hexadecimal number formed of the characters '0'-'9' and 'a'-'f' or 'A'-'F' ending with a 'H' or 'h'. The first character must be a decimal digit, so it may be necessary to prefix a hexadecimal number with the '0' character.

**Examples:** 45H; 0FFD4h; 9abcH

6.2.2 EXPRESSION STRING

An *expression_string* is a *string* with a length of 0, 1 or 2 bytes. The value of the string is calculated by putting the last character (if any) in the least significant byte of a word and the second last character (if any) in the most significant byte of the word.

*string* is a string of ASCII characters, enclosed in single ('') or double (""") quotes. The starting and closing quote must be the same. To include the enclosing quote in the string, double it. E.g. the string containing both quotes can be denoted as: """" or """"."
Examples:

'A' + 1 ; a 1-byte ASCII string, result 42H
"9C" + 1 ; a 2-byte ASCII string, result 3944H

6.2.3 SYMBOL

A symbol is an identifier. A symbol represents the value of an identifier which is already defined, or will be defined in the current source module by means of a label declaration, equate directive or the EXTRN directive. Symbols result in relocatable expressions.

Examples:

CON1 EQU 3H ; The variable CON1 represents the value of 3

MOV R1, CON1 + 0FFD3H ; Move contents of address 0FFD7H to register R1
6.3 OPERATORS

There are two types of operators:

- unary operators
- binary operators

Operators can be arithmetic operators, relational operators, logical operators, or special operators. All operators are described in the following sections.

If the grouping of the operators is not specified with parentheses, the operator precedence is used to determine evaluation order. Every operator has a precedence level associated with it. The following table lists the operators and their order of precedence (in descending order).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operators</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LOW, HIGH, BANK</td>
<td>unary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+, -</td>
<td>unary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*, /, MOD, SHL, SHR</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+, -</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EQ, NE, LT, LE, GT, GE, =, &lt;&gt;, &lt;, &lt;=, &gt;, &gt;=</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT</td>
<td>unary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR, XOR</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 6-2: Operators Precedence List*

Except for the unary operators, the assembler evaluates expressions with operators of the same precedence level left-to-right. The unary operators are evaluated right-to-left. So, \(-4 + 3 * 2\) evaluates to \((\text{-}4) + (3 * 2)\). Note that you can also use the ‘.’ operator in expressions (for bit selection in a byte)!
6.3.1 ADDITION AND SUBTRACTION

Synopsis:
Addition: \( \text{operand} + \text{operand} \)
Subtraction: \( \text{operand} - \text{operand} \)

The + operator adds its two operands and the – operator subtracts them. The operands can be any expression evaluating to an absolute number or a relocatable operand.

Examples:
- \( 0a342h + 23h \); addition of absolute numbers
- \( 0ff1ah - \text{AVAR} \); subtraction with a variable

6.3.2 SIGN OPERATORS

Synopsis:
Plus: \( +\text{operand} \)
Minus: \( -\text{operand} \)

The + operator does not modify its operand. The – operator subtracts its operand from zero.

Example:
- \( 5 + -3 \); result is 2
6.3.3 MULTIPLICATION AND DIVISION

Synopsis:

- Multiplication: \( \text{operand} \times \text{operand} \)
- Division: \( \text{operand} \div \text{operand} \)
- Modulo: \( \text{operand} \mod \text{operand} \)

The \( \times \) operator multiplies its two operands, the \( \div \) operator performs an integer division, discarding any remainder. The MOD operator also performs an integer division, but discards the quotient and returns the remainder. The operands can be any expression evaluating to an absolute number or a relocatable operand.

Examples:

- \( \text{AVER} \times 2 \); multiplication
- \( 0ff3cH / \text{COUNT} \); division
- \( 23 \mod 4 \); modulo, result is 3

6.3.4 RELATIONAL OPERATORS

Synopsis:

- Equal: \( \text{operand} \text{EQ} \text{operand} \)
- Not equal: \( \text{operand} \text{NE} \text{operand} \)
- Less than: \( \text{operand} \text{LT} \text{operand} \)
- Less than or equal: \( \text{operand} \text{LE} \text{operand} \)
- Greater than: \( \text{operand} \text{GT} \text{operand} \)
- Greater than or equal: \( \text{operand} \text{GE} \text{operand} \)

These operators compare their operands and return an absolute number (a bit) of 0ffffH for 'true' and 0 for 'false'. The operands can be any expression evaluating to an absolute number or a relocatable operand.
Examples:

3 GE 4 ; result is 0 (false)
4 EQ COUNT ; 0xffffH (true), if COUNT is 4.
; 0 otherwise.
9 LT 0Ah ; result is 0xffffH (true)

6.3.5 BITWISE OPERATORS

Synopsis:

Bitwise AND: operand AND operand
Bitwise OR: operand OR operand
Bitwise XOR: operand XOR operand
Bitwise NOT: NOT operand

The AND, OR and XOR operators take the bit-wise AND, OR respectively XOR of the left and right operand. The NOT operator performs a bit-wise complement on its operand. The operands can be any expression evaluating to an absolute number or a relocatable operand.

Examples:

0Bh and 3 ; result is 3
1011b
0011b and
0011b

NOT 0Ah ; result is 5
not 1010b = 0101b

NOT 0Ah ; result is 0xffffH
not 00000000 00001010b
= 11111111 11110101b
6.3.6 SHIFT OPERATORS

Synopsis:

Shift left: \( \text{operand} \quad \text{SHL} \quad \text{count} \)
Shift right: \( \text{operand} \quad \text{SHR} \quad \text{count} \)

These operators shift their left operand (\( \text{operand} \)) either left (SHL) or right (SHR) by the number of bits (absolute number) specified with the right operand (\( \text{count} \)). The operands can be any expression evaluating to an absolute number or a relocatable operand.

Examples:

\[
\text{AVAR shr COUNT ; shift right variable AVAR,}
\quad \text{; COUNT times}
\]

6.3.7 SELECTION OPERATORS

Synopsis:

Select high byte: \( \text{HIGH} \quad \text{operand} \)
Select low byte: \( \text{LOW} \quad \text{operand} \)
Select code bank: \( \text{BANK} \quad \text{operand} \)

Dot operator: \( \text{bitbyte}.\text{bitpos} \)

LOW selects the least significant byte of its operand, HIGH selects the most significant byte. With BANK you get the code bank in which the operand is located.

The . (dot) operator singles out the bit number specified by the \( \text{bitpos} \) from the \( \text{bitbyte} \). The result is an address in the BIT addressable memory space.

\( \text{bitbyte} \) can have the following absolute values:

\[
\begin{align*}
20h \ldots 2fh & \quad (8\text{-bit byte offset in RAM}) \\
80h \ldots 0f8h & \quad (8\text{-bit byte offset in SFR; value must be a multiple of 8})
\end{align*}
\]

\( \text{bitpos} \) can have the following values:

\[
00h \ldots 07h
\]
Examples:

```assembly
DB   HIGH  1234H ; stores 12H
DB   LOW   1234H ; stores 34H
```

RV SEGMENT CODE
RSEG CODE
MOV DPL,#LOW(func)
MOV DPH,#HIGH(func)
MOV P1,#BANK(func)

EXTRN CODE(func)
END

6.4 SEGMENT TYPE OF EXPRESSIONS

The segment type of an expression involving more than one operand is assigned according to the following rules:

1. The segment type of a unary operation (+, -, NOT, LOW, HIGH, BANK) will be the same as the segment type of the operand.

2. The segment type of a binary + or – operation is NUMBER, unless one of the operands has type NUMBER, in which case the segment type will be the type of the other operand.

3. The segment type of the binary operations except + and – will be NUMBER.
### 6.5 PREDEFINED SYMBOLS

Built into the assembler are a number of symbol definitions for various 8051 addresses in bit, data and code memory space. These symbols are treated by the assembler as though they were defined with the BIT, DATA and CODE assembler directives. The predefined symbols are listed on the next page.

#### BIT Addresses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>BIT</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EA</td>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>0AFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>0D0H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OV</td>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>0D2H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RS0</td>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>0D3H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>BIT</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RS1</td>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>0D4H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F0</td>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>0D5H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC</td>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>0D6H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CY</td>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>0D7H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 6-3: BIT Addresses*

#### DATA Addresses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>DATA</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P0</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>080H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>081H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPL</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>082H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPH</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>083H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCON</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>088H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TL0</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>089H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TL1</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>08AH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH0</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>08BH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH1</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>08CH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>DATA</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>090H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCON</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>098H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBUF</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>099H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>0A0H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>0A8H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>0B0H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>0B8H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSW</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>0D0H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>0E0H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>0F0H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 6-4: DATA Addresses*
**CODE Addresses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>CODE</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>CODE</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RESET</td>
<td>CODE</td>
<td>000H</td>
<td>EXTI1</td>
<td>CODE</td>
<td>013H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTI0</td>
<td>CODE</td>
<td>003H</td>
<td>TIMER1</td>
<td>CODE</td>
<td>01BH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMER0</td>
<td>CODE</td>
<td>00BH</td>
<td>SINT</td>
<td>CODE</td>
<td>023H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 6–5: CODE Addresses*

### 6.6 INCLUDE FILES

Included in the assembler package (subdirectory *8051* of the directory *include*) are a number of include files, containing symbol definitions for the extra hardware registers and bits of the various 8051 derivatives. By including the right definition file, it is possible to use all symbolic register and bit names of a particular derivative, as defined by the manufacturer. For example, *reg44.inc* for the 8044 processor.
7.1 INTRODUCTION

Assembler directives, or pseudo instructions, are used to control the assembly process. Rather than being translated into a 8051 machine instruction, assembler directives are interpreted by the assembler. Only the DB and DW directives actually cause code to be generated. The other directives perform actions like defining or switching segments, defining symbols or changing the location counter.

7.2 DIRECTIVES OVERVIEW

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directive</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DEBUGGING</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?FILE &quot;filename&quot;</td>
<td>Generate filename symbol record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?SYMB string, expr [abs_expr] [abs_expr]</td>
<td>Generate hll symbol info record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SYMBOL DEFINITION</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name SEGMENT type [attr] [OVERLAY( b [,b ]...)]</td>
<td>Declare relocatable segment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equ-name EQU expression</td>
<td>Assign expression to name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set-name SET expression</td>
<td>Define symbol for expression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit-name BIT bit-address</td>
<td>Assign bit address to name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name DATA expression</td>
<td>Assign DATA address to name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name IDATA expression</td>
<td>Assign IDATA address to name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name XDATA expression</td>
<td>Assign XDATA address to name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name CODE expression</td>
<td>Assign CODE address to name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>STORAGE INITIALIZATION AND RESERVATION</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[label:] DS abs_expr</td>
<td>Reserve bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[label:] DBIT abs_expr</td>
<td>Reserve bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[label:] DB item [...]</td>
<td>1-byte initialization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[label:] DW init [...]</td>
<td>2-byte initialization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PROGRAM LINKAGE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUBLIC name [...]</td>
<td>Define symbols to be public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTRN type (sym[,sym]...) [type (sym[,sym]...)]...</td>
<td>Set symbols to be defined extern.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAME module-name</td>
<td>Define module name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7-1: asm51 directives
Table 7-1: *asm51* directives (continued)

### 7.3 DEBUGGING

The assembler *asm51* supports the following debugging directives: ?FILE, ?LINE and ?SYMB. These directives will not be used by an assembler programmer. They are used by a high level language code generator to pass high level language symbol information to a debugger.

### 7.4 LOCATION COUNTER

The location counter keeps track of the current offset within the current segment that is being assembled. This value, symbolized by the character '$', is considered as an offset and may only be used in the same context where offset is allowed.

### 7.5 DIRECTIVES

The rest of this chapter contains an alphabetical list of the assembler directives.
?FILE

Synopsis:

?FILE "filename"

Description:

This directive is intended mainly for use by a high level language code generator. It generates a symbol record containing the high level source filename, which is written to the object file. Also, the current high level line number is reset to zero. The filename can be used by a high level language debugger.
?LINE

Synopsis:

?LINE \([abs\_expr]\)

Description:

This directive is intended mainly for use by a high level language code generator. It generates a symbol record containing the high level source file line number, which is written to the object file. The line number can be used by a high level language debugger. \(abs\_expr\) is any absolute expression. If \(abs\_expr\) is omitted, the line number defined by the previous \?LINE or \?FILE is incremented and used.
?SYMB

Synopsis:

?SYMB string, expression [, abs_expr] [, abs_expr]

Description:

The ?SYMB directive is used for passing high-level language symbol information to the assembler. This information can be used by a high level language debugger.
**BIT**

**Synopsis:**

\[ \text{name BIT expr} \]

**Description:**

The **BIT** directive assigns a BIT address to a symbol name. The expression must evaluate into a number or BIT address and may not contain forward references. The symbol will be of type BIT.

**Examples:**

```
RSEG A_SEG ;relocatable bit
CTRL: DS 1 ;addressable segment

TST BIT CTRL.0 ;bit in relocatable byte
OK BIT TST+1 ;next bit
TST2 BIT 64H ;absolute bit
```
**BSEG**

**Synopsis:**

\[ \text{BSEG} \ [\text{AT} \ abs_{-}expr] \]

**Description:**

Switch to the absolute BIT segment. The following statements will be assembled in the absolute mode within the BIT address space. The specified segment remains in effect until another segment directive is encountered. Unless a starting address is specified with \textit{abs_expr}, the assembler continues the last absolute BIT segment. The first absolute BIT segment starts at address zero.

**Examples:**

\begin{verbatim}
BSEG AT 70H ;absolute bit segment
\end{verbatim}
CODE

Synopsis:

\[ \text{name} \ \text{CODE} \ \text{expr} \]

Description:

The \text{CODE} directive assigns a CODE address to a symbol name. The expression must evaluate into a number or CODE address and may not contain forward references. The symbol will be of type CODE.

Examples:

\[ \text{RESTART} \quad \text{CODE} \quad 00H \]
CSEG

Synopsis:

CSEG [AT abs_expr]

Description:

Switch to the absolute CODE segment. The following statements will be assembled in the absolute mode within the CODE address space. The specified segment remains in effect until another segment directive is encountered. Unless a starting address is specified with abs_expr, the assembler continues the last absolute CODE segment. The first absolute CODE segment starts at address zero. When the assembler starts up, an implicit CSEG AT 0 is performed.

Examples:

CSEG AT 00H ; first absolute code segment
DATA

Synopsis:

\[ \text{name} \ \text{DATA} \ \text{expr} \]

Description:

The **DATA** directive assigns a DATA address to a symbol name. The expression must evaluate into a number or DATA address and may not contain forward references. The symbol will be of type DATA.

Examples:

```
TSTART    DATA 60H  ;define TSTART to be at
              ;location 60H
TEND      DATA 6DH   ;define TEND to be at
              ;location 6DH
```
**DB**

**Synopsis:**

```
[label:]  DB  item  [item]...
```

**Description:**

The **DB** directive initializes memory with byte values. This directive is only allowed in a CODE segment. An *item* can be either a string, or an expression. For strings, each character in the string is placed in one byte of memory.

With this directive, strings longer than 2 characters and empty strings are acceptable. For every expression in the item list, the least significant byte is placed in memory.

**Examples:**

```
HELLO:   DB  'Hello World'  ;11 bytes in CODE memory
NODD:    DB  1,3,5,7,9       ;initialize 5 bytes
```
DBIT

Synopsis:

[label:] DBIT abs_expr

Description:

The DBIT directive reserves space in bit units. It can be used only in a BIT type segment. The expression must be an absolute expression without forward references. When a DBIT directive is encountered, the location counter of the current segment is incremented by the number of bits specified with the expression.

Examples:

NBITS:  DBIT 6  ; reserve 6 bits
**DS**

**Synopsis:**

```
[label:] DS abs_expr
```

**Description:**

The **DS** directive reserves space in byte units. It can be used in any segment except a BIT type segment. The expression must be an absolute expression without forward references. When a **DS** directive is encountered, the location counter of the current segment is incremented by the value of the expression.

**Examples:**

```assembly
DS 3+2 ; reserve 5 bytes
```
DSEG

Synopsis:

DSEG [AT abs_expr]

Description:

Switch to the absolute DATA segment. The following statements will be
assembled in the absolute mode within the DATA address space. The
specified segment remains in effect until another segment directive is
encountered. Unless a starting address is specified with abs_expr, the
assembler continues the last absolute DATA segment. The first absolute
DATA segment starts at address zero.

Examples:

DSEG ;switch to DATA segment
**DW**

**Synopsis:**

\[ label:\] **DW** expr [,expr]...

**Description:**

The **DW** directive initializes memory with word values. This directive is only allowed in a CODE segment. For every expression in the item list, the word value represented by the expression is placed in memory with the high byte first. Unlike the **DB** directive, no more than two characters are permitted in a character string, and the null string evaluates to 0000h.

**Examples:**

`WRDS: DW 34,'OK' ;initialize 2 words in memory`
**END**

**Synopsis:**

```
END
```

**Description:**

This should be the last statement of the assembly source. Text following the **END** directive is skipped and a warning message is generated if there is any. When the **END** is missing a warning is generated also. Empty lines, lines consisting of tabs and spaces only, may follow the **END** directive. No warning message is generated in this case.

**Examples:**

```
DSEG
AVAR    DW   2

CSEG

END    ; End of assembler source
```

This line is ignored by **asm51**.
**EQU**

**Synopsis:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{name} & \quad \text{EQU} \quad \text{expr} \\
\text{name} & \quad \text{EQU} \quad \text{register}
\end{align*}
\]

**Description:**

The **EQU** directive assigns a numeric value or register name to a symbol name. The expression may not contain forward references or externals. The symbol gets the same type as \textit{expr} and can be used in any context where \textit{expr} is allowed.

In the second form, \textit{name} is declared to be equivalent to a register name; the identifier \textit{name} can be used in any context where \textit{register} is allowed. Valid register names are: A, AB, C, DPTR, PC and R0–R7.

**Examples:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{COUNT} & \quad \text{EQU} \quad \text{0FFH} \quad ;\text{COUNT is the same as 0FFH} \\
\text{ACCU} & \quad \text{EQU} \quad \text{A} \quad ;\text{define ACCU to stand for A}
\end{align*}
\]
**EXTRN**

**Synopsis:**

```
EXTRN  type (sym[,sym]...)  [type (sym[,sym]...)...]
```

**Description:**

With the **EXTRN** directive it is possible to declare symbols that are defined PUBLIC in other modules. The segment type of the symbols is specified with `type`, which must be CODE, DATA, XDATA, IDATA, BIT or NUMBER. The segment type NUMBER does not correspond to a specific memory space, but indicates a typeless number.

**Examples:**

```
EXTRN  CODE (asym,get_info), DATA(count)
EXTRN  BIT(mybit,abit), NUMBER(tnum)
```
**IDATA**

**Synopsis:**

\[ name \ IDATA \ expr \]

**Description:**

The IDATA directive assigns an IDATA address to a symbol name. The expression must evaluate into a number or IDATA address and may not contain forward references. The symbol will be of type IDATA.

**Examples:**

```
TSTART IDATA 60H ;define TSTART to be at
;location 60H
TEND IDATA 6DH ;define TEND to be at
;location 6DH
```
**ISEG**

**Synopsis:**

ISEG [AT abs_expr]

**Description:**

Switch to the absolute IDATA segment. The following statements will be assembled in the absolute mode within the IDATA address space. The specified segment remains in effect until another segment directive is encountered. Unless a starting address is specified with `abs_expr`, the assembler continues the last absolute IDATA segment. The first absolute IDATA segment starts at address zero.

**Examples:**

ISEG AT 80H  ;start IDATA segment at address 80H
NAME

Synopsis:

**NAME** module_name

Description:

The **NAME** directive is used to identify the current program module. If this directive is not present, the module name is taken from the input source file name.

Examples:

name my_prog ; module-name is my_prog
**ORG**

**Synopsis:**

\[
\text{ORG } expr
\]

**Description:**

The **ORG** directive is used to alter the assembler’s location counter of the current segment to set a new program origin for statements following the directive. If the current segment is absolute, the value will be an absolute address in the current segment; if it is relocatable, the value is an offset from the base address of the instance of the segment in the current module. The expression may not contain any forward references.

**Examples:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ORG } ($ + 1000) & ; \text{ the current location counter is incremented by 1000} \\
\text{ORG } 60 & ; \text{ set location counter to 60}
\end{align*}
\]
PUBLIC

Synopsis:

PUBLIC name [, name ]...

Description:

The PUBLIC directive allows symbols to be known outside the currently assembled module. Each symbol name may be declared public only once in a module. Any symbol declared PUBLIC must have been defined somewhere else in the program.

Examples:

public pub_symb ;pub_symb is known outside module
RSEG

Synopsis:

RSEG  segment_name

Description:

Switch to a relocatable segment previously defined by a SEGMENT directive. The following statements will be assembled in the relocatable segment segment_name, using the location counter of the named segment. The specified segment remains in effect until another segment directive is encountered. The location counter of the relocatable segment is initially set to zero.

Examples:

CD_SEG SEGMENT CODE  ;relocatable code segment
.
.
RSEG CD_SEG  ;select relocatable code segment
SEGMENT

Synopsis:

\[\text{name } \text{SEGMENT } \text{type } \text{[attr]} \text{[OVERLAY}(b, b, \ldots)\text{]}\]

Description:

The SEGMENT directive allows you to declare a relocatable segment, assign a set of segment attributes, and initialize the location counter to zero.

The segment type specifies the address space where the segment will reside. Allowable segment types are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>bit address space (on-chip)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE</td>
<td>code address space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>direct addressable data (on-chip)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDATA</td>
<td>indirect addressable space (on-chip)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XDATA</td>
<td>external address space</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 7-2: Segment memory types*

The optional segment attribute defines the relocation type for this segment. Possible relocation types are:

- **BITADDRESSABLE**
  Specifies a segment to be relocated within the bit space on a byte boundary. Allowed only for DATA segments and the segment size is limited to 16 bytes.

- **COMMON**
  Specifies a segment to be located in the common area. Allowed only for CODE segments. This is only useful when code bank switching is used.

- **PAGE**
  Specifies a segment whose start address must be on a 256-byte page boundary. Allowed only for CODE and XDATA segments.

- **INPAGE**
  Specifies a segment which must be contained in a 256-byte page. Allowed only with CODE and XDATA segments.
- **INBLOCK**
  Specifies a segment which must be contained in a 2048-byte page. Allowed only for CODE segments.

- **UNIT**
  The default relocation attribute: the segment will not be aligned.

- **ROMDATA**
  Specifies that the segment contains initialized data. This attribute is allowed for CODE and XDATA segments only. This information is meaningful to allocate constant data in the XDATA memory space. When used with CODE segments it is only meaningful for debugging purposes. A segment that has been declared with the ROMDATA attribute cannot be disassembled by a debugger.

- **SHORT**
  XDATA segments can be declared with the SHORT attribute. The linker allocates the segment in a page of auxiliary memory.

With the optional **OVERLAY** attribute, it is possible to specify the register banks (b) used in the segment. This information will be used by the linker to overlay segments using the same register banks. No overlaying will be done when the **OVERLAY** attribute is omitted. The **OVERLAY** attribute is not allowed for CODE segments.

**Examples:**

```
DATSEG SEGMENT DATA ; relocatable data segment
```
SET

Synopsis:

\[ \text{name \ SET \ expr} \]
\[ \text{name \ SET \ register} \]

Description:

The SET directive assigns a numeric value or register name to a symbol \( \text{name} \). The expression may not contain forward references. The symbol gets the same type as \( \text{expr} \) and can be used in any context where \( \text{expr} \) is allowed.

In the second form, \( \text{name} \) is declared to be equivalent to a register name; the identifier \( \text{name} \) can be used in any context where \( \text{register} \) is allowed. Valid register names are: A, AB, C, DPTR, PC and R0–R7.

Unlike the EQU directive, multiple SET directives for the same symbol may be present in one source file. The most recent SET directive determines the value of the symbol.

Examples:

\[ \text{CNT SET 0 } \quad \text{;set counter to 0} \]
\[ \text{CNT SET CNT+1 } \quad \text{;increment counter} \]
USING

Synopsis:

\texttt{USING} \ \textit{expression}

Description:

This directive notifies the assembler of the register bank that is used by the subsequent code. The expression is the number (between 0 and 3 inclusive) which refers to one of four register banks.

The \texttt{USING} directive allows you to use the predefined symbolic register addresses (AR0 through AR7) instead of their absolute addresses. In addition, the directive causes the assembler to reserve a space for the specified register bank.

Examples:

\begin{verbatim}
USING 3
PUSH AR2 ;Push register 2 of bank 3

USING 1
PUSH AR2 ;Push register 2 of bank 1
\end{verbatim}

If you equate a symbol (e.g. using \texttt{EQU} directive) to an ARi symbol, the user-defined symbol will not change its value as a result of the subsequent \texttt{USING} directive.
**XDATA**

**Synopsis:**

\[ \text{name XDATA expr} \]

**Description:**

The `XDATA` directive assigns an XDATA address to a symbol name. The expression must evaluate into a number or XDATA address and may not contain forward references. The symbol will be of type XDATA.

**Examples:**

```plaintext
RSEG XSPACE

ROOM: DS 4 ;reserve 4 bytes of XDATA
MORE_X XDATA ROOM+2 ;define MORE_X to be 2
;bytes after ROOM
```
XSEG

Synopsis:

XSEG [SHORT] [AT abs_expr]

Description:

Switch to the absolute XDATA segment. The following statements will be assembled in the absolute mode within the XDATA address space. The specified segment remains in effect until another segment directive is encountered.

With the SHORT attribute the linker allocates the segment in a page of auxiliary memory (PDATA).

Unless a starting address is specified with abs_expr, the assembler continues the last absolute XDATA segment. The first absolute XDATA segment starts at address zero.

Examples:

XDAT_SEG SEGMENT XDATA ;reloc. data segment
XSEG SHORT AT 10H ;abs. pdata segment
DS 1

XSEG AT 70H ;abs. xdata segment
DS 1
The *asm51* 8051 Assembler accepts all the assembly language instruction mnemonics defined for the 8051 by Intel. The mnemonics are listed in the table below. The addressing modes used with the instructions and the meaning and use of the Condition Codes are identical to the corresponding Intel features.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acall</td>
<td>Absolute subroutine call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add</td>
<td>Add into Accumulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addc</td>
<td>Add with carry into Accumulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ajmp</td>
<td>Absolute jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anl</td>
<td>AND register, direct byte, indirect RAM or immediate data to Accumulator&lt;br&gt;AND Acc. or immediate data to direct byte&lt;br&gt;AND direct bit to Carry&lt;br&gt;AND complement of direct bit to Carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call</td>
<td>Generic call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cjne</td>
<td>Compare direct byte, or immediate data to Accumulator and jump if not equal&lt;br&gt;Compare immediate data to register and jump if not equal&lt;br&gt;Compare immediate to indirect and jump if not equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clr</td>
<td>Clear Accumulator&lt;br&gt;Clear Carry&lt;br&gt;Clear direct bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpl</td>
<td>Complement Accumulator&lt;br&gt;Complement Carry or direct bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da</td>
<td>Decimal addition adjust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dec</td>
<td>Decrement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>djnz</td>
<td>Decrement and jump if not zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div</td>
<td>Divide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inc</td>
<td>Increment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jb</td>
<td>Jump if direct bit is set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jbc</td>
<td>Jump if direct bit set and clear bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jc</td>
<td>Jump if Carry set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jmp</td>
<td>Jump indirect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jmp</td>
<td>Generic jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jnb</td>
<td>Jump if direct bit is NOT set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jnc</td>
<td>Jump if Carry not set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jnz</td>
<td>Jump if Accumulator is not zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jz</td>
<td>Jump if Accumulator is zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lcall</td>
<td>Long subroutine call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ljmp</td>
<td>Long jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mov</td>
<td>Move register, direct byte, indirect RAM or immediate data to Accumulator. Move Acc, immediate data or direct byte to register. Move Acc. register, direct byte, indirect RAM or immediate data to direct byte. Move Acc. direct byte or immediate data to indirect RAM. Load Data pointer with a 16-bit constant. Move direct bit to Carry. Move Carry to direct bit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movc</td>
<td>Move code byte to Accumulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movx</td>
<td>Move External RAM to Accumulator or vice versa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mul</td>
<td>Multiply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nop</td>
<td>No operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orl</td>
<td>OR register, direct byte, indirect RAM or immediate data to Accumulator. OR Accumulator to direct byte. OR immediate data to direct byte. OR direct bit to Carry. OR complement of direct bit to Carry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push</td>
<td>Push direct byte onto stack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pop</td>
<td>Pop direct byte from stack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rl</td>
<td>Rotate Accumulator left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rlc</td>
<td>Rotate Accumulator left through carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rr</td>
<td>Rotate Accumulator right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rrc</td>
<td>Rotate Accumulator right through carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ret</td>
<td>Return from subroutine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reti</td>
<td>Return from interrupt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setb</td>
<td>Set Carry or direct bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sjmp</td>
<td>Short jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subb</td>
<td>Subtract from Accumulator with borrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swap</td>
<td>Swap nibbles within the Accumulator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Instruction Set

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xch</td>
<td>Exchange with Accumulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xchd</td>
<td>Exchange low-order Digit indirect with Accumulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xrl</td>
<td>Exclusive–OR direct byte, indirect RAM, immediate data to Accumulator. Exlusive–OR Accumulator to direct byte. Exclusive–OR immediate data to direct byte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 8–1: Instruction set

The 8051 assembler recognizes generic jump and call instructions. The `call` instruction is translated to an `acall` or `lcall` instruction, dependent on the address of the operand. The `jmp` instruction is translated to an `ajmp`, `ljmp`, or `sjmp` instruction.

In most cases, the assembler selects the shortest possible instruction, but with for instance external references in the address expression, the assembler has to generate an instruction with a 16 bit address. When it is known beforehand, that a short instruction will suffice, it is always possible to use this instruction instead of the generic version. If it turns out during linkage that an offset/address doesn’t fit, the linker will give a warning message.
9.1 OVERVIEW

The next sections describe how the 8051 linker program link51 works. The installation of this program is part of the installation of the assembler package 'TASKING 8051 Cross-Assembler'. We first introduce the linker by describing its functions globally and giving some basic examples. Later on a more elaborate description of all the features follows.

The OMF51 format mentioned in this chapter is the standard OMF51 object and OMF51 library format as defined by Intel.

9.2 INTRODUCTION

link51 is a program that reads one or more object modules created by the assembler asm51 or object modules in OMF51 format and locates them in memory. Object modules can be in ordinary files or in object libraries. The format of the object modules can be in the a.out file format, or the OMF51 format. Modules in the a.out format have been created by the assembler as a separate module in an individual object file. Afterwards you can put these files in a library with the library manager (ar51).

For linking OMF51 objects and OMF51 libraries, see section 9.11, Linking OMF51 Objects and Libraries.

The following diagram shows the input files and output files of the linker:

Figure 9–1: Linker
Linker purpose

Many programs are often too long or too complex to be in one single unit. As programs in a single unit grow too large they become more difficult to maintain. An application broken down in small functional units is easier to code and debug. Translation of these programs into load modules is faster than their counterpart in one module.

The linker translates relocatable object modules into absolute load files. This lets you write programs that are (partially) made up of modules that can be placed anywhere in memory. Doing so, reusability of your code increases. Those programs that fulfill a specific task needed in many applications (I/O-routines) can be placed in a library, thus making them available for many programmers.

Linker functions

link51 performs the following tasks:

- Combine partial segments defined with the same name in different modules into a single segment.
- Transforming relocatable addresses into absolute addresses.
- Generate an absolute output file and link map.
- Resolve external references.
- Combine object modules in single files or in libraries in a load module.
- Allocate address space for segments and associate an absolute address with each segment.
- Overlay segments in internal ram and external ram.

9.3 Naming Conventions

Segment

A segment is a unit of code or data in memory. Every segment has a type: the memory type in which it is located. A segment can be absolute: in the assembler source text an absolute address is bound to the segment. A relocatable segment is a segment that is defined in the assembler text without an address. For these segments the final location in memory is determined by the linker. A segment can be split up into parts each of which can reside in different modules in the application. These parts are called partial segments.
Module
A module is a unit of code that can be located in a file. A module can contain one or more segments. The terms object module and object file are used as equivalent terms.

Library
An object library is a file containing a number of object modules. The linker includes only those parts from a library that have been referred to from other modules.

Program
A program can be created out of one single module or out of a number of modules. A part of the program can be in a library.

9.4 Invocation
The linker can be called in three different ways:

- `link51 ifile[,ifile]... [option]... [control]...
- `link51 @linker-command-file`
- `link51 _linker-command-file`

When you use a UNIX shell (C-shell, Bourne shell), options containing special characters (such as `()`) must be enclosed with “””. The invocations for UNIX and PC are the same, except for the `-?` option in the C-shell:

- `link51 "-?"` or `link51 -\?

In the first invocation all relevant information is specified on the command line. The second and third invocation of `link51` demonstrate the use of a linker command file.

You can use options and controls to steer the linking/locating process. Options can appear in any order. Options start with a ‘-‘. Only the `-lv` option is position dependent. Options that require a filename can be separated by a space or not: `-oname` is equal to `-o name`. Options and controls are explained in detail in the following sections.
Input files

`ifile` can be any object file or library. These input files must be separated by commas ','. The first instance where two items on the command line follow each other without being separated by a comma and not preceded by a minus sign (an option) is taken to be the start of the optional part of the command line (the controls). Input files must be valid names of disk files of the operating system you are working with.

Output file

The output file is a disk file containing the absolute output of the linker. The name of the file can be specified on the command line using the `-o` option or with the TO control. The name following this keyword is used as output file. If no output file is specified the linker uses the name of the first input file to create an output filename. The basename of this filename is used as an output filename. So if no output filename is specified, the file created by the linker will have no extension. Because of this, all input filenames must have an extension. Offending this necessity leads to a fatal error reported by the linker.

Command files

Applications consisting of a large number of object modules require a lot of typing if the linker must be started and all the module names (and options) must be entered. Instead of typing all the information on the command line, it can be put into a file (using spaces, tabs and newlines freely).

The filename can start with a '@'-sign or '_'-sign. This filename can be used in the linker invocation as the one and only argument. The reason of the two different prefixes is that the '@'-sign is special to certain operating systems. The linker internally removes the '@'-sign or '_'-sign to work better with 'make' utilities.

The contents of this file is not read as an object module, but the linker processes it as if it had been typed on the command line.

Examples:

1. `link51 mod1.obj, mod2.obj -o demo1.out`

In the example above the plain object files `mod1.obj` and `mod2.obj` are linked into the output file `demo1.out`. 
2. **link51 mod1.obj, mod2.obj, float.lib, util.lib -o demo2.out**

   This example shows the use of libraries. Besides the plain object files `mod1.obj` and `mod2.obj` two library files are specified. The linker includes only those modules from the library that have been referenced in the first two object files.

3. **link51 @lcmd**

   The linker first tries to read the file `@lcmd` as a text file. If this fails, the linker tries to read the file `lcmd` as a text file. If this fails also, the linker issues a warning message. If the file was found, the contents of this file are interpreted as command line information. e.g.:

   ```
   @lcmd:
   mod1.obj, mod2.obj, mod3.obj,
   mod4.obj, mod5.obj, mod6.obj
   -o demo3.out
   ramsize( 080H )
   ```

   After reading the file `@lcmd` the six object modules are linked in the output file `demo3.out`. The control ramsize informs the linker about the size of on-chip ram.

4. **link51 _lcmd**

   The linker first tries to read the file `_lcmd` as a text file. If this fails, the linker tries to read the file `lcmd` as a text file. If this fails also, the linker issues a warning message. If the file was found, the content of this file is interpreted as command line information. e.g.:

   ```
   _lcmd:
   mod1.obj, mod2.obj, mod3.obj,
   float.lib, util.lib
   -o
demo4.out
   ramsize( 080H )
   ```

   After reading the file `_lcmd` the three object modules and two libraries are linked in the output file `demo4.out`. The control ramsize informs the linker about the size of on-chip ram.
9.5 LINK51 OPTIONS

The linker recognizes the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-?</td>
<td>Display invocation syntax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-A architecture</td>
<td>Select libraries specifically designed for a particular architecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-L directory</td>
<td>Additional search path for libraries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-V</td>
<td>Display version header only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-banks num</td>
<td>Specify the number of code banks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bankids=list</td>
<td>Specify alternative code bank identification numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-common size</td>
<td>Specify the size of the common area used for code bank switching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-enum</td>
<td>Convert warning num to an error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-err file</td>
<td>Redirect error messages to file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-f file</td>
<td>Read command line information from file, ‘-’ means stdin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lx</td>
<td>Link library file x.lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-o file</td>
<td>Specify name of output file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-wnum</td>
<td>Convert error num to a warning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9–1: Options summary

A detailed description of the option is given below.

With options that can be set from within EDE, you will find a mouse icon that describes the corresponding action.
-?

Option:
  
  -?

Description:
  Display an explanation of the invocation syntax at \texttt{stdout}.

Example:
  
  \texttt{link51 -?}
-A

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Miscellaneous. Add the option to the Additional linker options/controls field.

Arguments:

The name of the subdirectory to search for architecture specific libraries.

Description:

Specify a subdirectory of the library directory to search for architecture specific libraries. If a library is not found in the architecture subdirectory, it is searched for in the library directory itself.

Example:

To specify the directory for libraries specifically designed for dallas_aa, enter:

```
link51 -Adallas_aa x.obj y.obj
```
-banks

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Bank Switching. Enter the number of banks in the Number of code banks field.

-banks number

Arguments:

The number of code banks.

Description:

Specify the number of code banks used.

Example:

To specify that you have 2 code memory banks, enter:

    link51 test.obj -banks 2 -otest.out

See section 9.8, Bank Switching, for more details.
-bankids

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Bank Switching. Enter new bank ids in the Use alternative code bank numbers field.

-\texttt{-bankids=\textit{list}}

Arguments:

A comma separated list of alternative code bank numbers.

Description:

By default code bank numbers used in the bank switch will equal the code bank. In some situations different bank ids are required. For example, the Silicon Laboratories CF12x family uses 0x00, 0x11, 0x22, 0x33 for banks 0, 1, 2 and 3 respectively.

Example:

To specify alternative bank numbers, enter:

\begin{verbatim}
link51 test.obj -banks 4 -bankids=0x00,0x11,0x22,0x33 -otest.out
\end{verbatim}

See section 9.8, Bank Switching, for more details.
-common

Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Bank Switching. Enter a size in the Size of common area (starting at code address 0) field.

```
-common size
```

Arguments:

The size of the common area.

Description:

Specify the size of the common area used for code bank switching.

Example:

To specify that you have 2 code memory banks and that the common area is at code address range 0 – 8000H, enter:

```
link51 test.obj -banks 2 -common 8000H -otest.out
```

See section 9.8, Bank Switching, for more details.
-e

Option:

-enum

Arguments:

The warning message number.

Description:

Convert the specified warning message to an error.

Example:

To convert warning 6 to an error, enter:

```sh
link51 test.obj -e6 -otest.out
```
-err

Option:

In EDE this option is not so useful. If you would use this option you would not see the error messages in the Build tab.

-err filename

Arguments:

An error output filename.

Description:

The linker redirects error messages to a file with the name filename.

Example:

To write errors to the file test.elk instead of stderr, enter:

   link51 test.obj -err test.elk -o test.out
Option:

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Miscellaneous. Add the option to the Additional linker options/controls field.

Arguments:

A filename for command line processing. The filename "-" may be used to denote standard input.

Description:

Use file for command line processing. To get around the limits on the size of the command line, it is possible to use command files. These command files contain the options that could not be part of the real command line. Command files can also be generated on the fly, for example by the make utility.

More than one -f option is allowed.

Some simple rules apply to the format of the command file:

1. It is possible to have multiple arguments on the same line in the command file.

2. To include whitespace in the argument, surround the argument with either single or double quotes.

3. If single or double quotes are to be used inside a quoted argument, we have to go by the following rules:

   a. If the embedded quotes are only single or double quotes, use the opposite quote around the argument. Thus, if a argument should contain a double quote, surround the argument with single quotes.

   b. If both types of quotes are used, we have to split the argument in such a way that each embedded quote is surrounded by the opposite type of quote.
Example:

"This has a single quote ’ embedded"

or

'This has a double quote " embedded'

or

'This has a double quote " and \ a single quote ‘’ embedded"

4. Some operating systems impose limits on the length of lines within a text file. To circumvent this limitation it is possible to use continuation lines. These lines end with a backslash and newline. In a quoted argument, continuation lines will be appended without stripping any whitespace on the next line. For non-quoted arguments, all whitespace on the next line will be stripped.

Example:

"This is a continuation \ line"
-> "This is a continuation line"

control(file1(mode,type),\
 file2(type))
->
 control(file1(mode,type),file2(type))

5. It is possible to nest command line files up to 25 levels.

Example:

Suppose the file mycmds contains the following line:

-err test.err
 test.obj

The command line can now be:

link51 -f mycmds
-L

Option:

From the Project menu, select Directories... Add one or more directory paths to the Library Files Path field.

-Ldirectory

Arguments:

The name of the directory to search for libraries.

Description:

Add directory to the list of directories that are searched for libraries. Directories specified with -L are searched before the standard directories specified by the environment variable CC51LIB and the ../lib directory relative to the directory where the executable is located. You can use the -L option more than once to add several directories to the search path for libraries. The search path is created in the same order as in which the directories are specified on the command line.

Example:

link51 -Lc:\cc51\examples\lib test.obj -lc51s
Linker

Option:
From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Linking. Enable one or more of the Library options. It depends on the settings in the C Compiler entry which options are available.

-1x

Arguments:
A string to form the name of the library x.lib.

Description:
Link library x.lib, where x is a string. The linker first searches for libraries in any directories specified with -L directory, then in the standard directories specified with the environment variable CC51LIB and finally in the ../lib directory relative to the directory where the executable is located.

This option is position dependent (see section 9.10, Linking with Libraries).

Example:
To link library c51s.lib after the user object and library are linked, enter:

    link51 myobj.obj,mylib.lib -lc51s
Option:
   -o filename

Arguments:
   An output filename.

Default:
   a.out

Description:
   Use filename as output filename of the linker. If this option is omitted, the default filename is a.out.

Example:
   To create the output file test.out instead of a.out, enter:

   link51 test.obj -o test.out
-V

Option:
- V

Description:
With this option you can display the version header of the linker. This option must be the only argument of link51. Other options are ignored. The linker exits after displaying the version header.

Example:
link51 -V

    TASKING 8051 linker/locator   vx.yrz Build nnn
    Copyright years Altium BV      Serial# 00000000
-W

Option:
   -wnum

Arguments:
The error message number.

Description:
Convert the specified error message to a warning.

Example:
To convert error 114 to a warning, enter:

   link51 test.obj -w114 -o test.out
9.6 LINK51 CONTROLS

The behavior of the linker can be influenced with controls. The linker can be informed how it has to do certain tasks. A control is accepted only once. If it is found twice the linker displays an error message and aborts. There are three types of controls:

- Linking controls
- Locating controls
- Listing controls

9.6.1 OVERVIEW LINK51 CONTROLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Abbr</th>
<th>Cl</th>
<th>Def</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BANK (bank, segment [(address)])</td>
<td>BA</td>
<td>Loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locate code segment in specified bank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BANKGRAPH</td>
<td>BG</td>
<td>List</td>
<td></td>
<td>References and calls between code banks in map file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIT (segment [(address)] [...])</td>
<td>BI</td>
<td>Loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locate bitaddressable on-chip data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASE NOCASE</td>
<td>CA</td>
<td>NOCA</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Scan symbols case sensitive. Scan symbols as is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHECK NOCHECK</td>
<td>CH</td>
<td>NOCH</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Check for empty segments. Accept empty segments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE (segment [(address)] [...])</td>
<td>CO</td>
<td>Loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locate code memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMON (segment [(address)])</td>
<td>CM</td>
<td>Loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locate code segment in common area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA (segment [(address)] [...])</td>
<td>DA</td>
<td>Loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locate direct addressable data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEBUGLINES NODEBUGLINES</td>
<td>DL</td>
<td>NODL</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Generate debug line records. No debug line records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEBUGPUBLICS NODEBUGPUBLICS</td>
<td>DP</td>
<td>NODP</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Generate public symbol records. No public symbol records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEBUGSYMBOLS NODEBUGSYMBOLS</td>
<td>DS</td>
<td>NODS</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Generate local symbol records. No local symbol records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBRANCH (c_segm, l_segm, ...)</td>
<td>FB</td>
<td>Mem</td>
<td></td>
<td>Designate branch for overlaying.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbr: Abbreviation of the control
Cl: Class, type of control, D means a debugging control, G means a miscellaneous linking control, List means a listing control, Loc means a locate control, Mem means a memory control
Def: Default control

Table 9-2: link51 controls
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Abbr</th>
<th>Cl</th>
<th>Def</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FUNCTIONOVERLAY (c_segm &gt;</td>
<td>] c_segm ...)</td>
<td>FO</td>
<td>Mem</td>
<td>No overlay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRAPH(number)</td>
<td>GR</td>
<td>List</td>
<td>GR(0)</td>
<td>Generate a call graph.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDATA (segment [(address)] [...])</td>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locate indirect addressable on-chip ram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LINES NOLINES</td>
<td>LI</td>
<td>List</td>
<td>NOLI</td>
<td>Line numbers in map file. No line number information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP NOMAP</td>
<td>MA</td>
<td>List</td>
<td>MA</td>
<td>Produce a link map in list file. Inhibit production of map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULTIPASS</td>
<td>MP</td>
<td>G</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rescan libraries to resolve externals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAME(module-name)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>No action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVERLAY (module &gt;</td>
<td>] module ... ) NOOVERLAY</td>
<td>OL</td>
<td>Mem</td>
<td>NOOL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGEWIDTH(width)</td>
<td>PW</td>
<td>List</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>Set map file page width.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRECEDE (segment [(address)] [...])</td>
<td>PC</td>
<td>Loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locate precedence on-chip ram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRINT [(filename)] NOPRINT</td>
<td>PR</td>
<td>List</td>
<td>PR</td>
<td>Print link map to named file. Do not generate list file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUBLICS NOPUBLICS</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>List</td>
<td>NOPL</td>
<td>Public symbols in map file. No public symbols in map file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAMSIZE(size)</td>
<td>RS</td>
<td>Mem</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>Specify internal data ram size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESERVE(memtype(address,address) [...])</td>
<td>RE</td>
<td>Mem</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reserve memory space for: bit addressable data Direct addressable data indirect addressable on-chip ram external ram code memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STACK (segment [(address)] [...])</td>
<td>ST</td>
<td>Loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locate indirect addressable on-chip ram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYMBOLS NOSYMBOLS</td>
<td>SB</td>
<td>List</td>
<td>NOSB</td>
<td>Local symbol information in map file. No local symbols in map file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XDATA (segment [(address)] [...])</td>
<td>XD</td>
<td>Loc</td>
<td></td>
<td>Locate external ram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XPAGE (page_number)</td>
<td>XP</td>
<td>Mem</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Specify auxiliary page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbr:** Abbreviation of the control  
**Cl:** Class, type of control,  
D means a debugging control  
G means a miscellaneous linking control  
List means a listing control  
Loc means a locate control  
Mem means a memory control  

*Table 9-2: link51 controls (continued)*
9.6.2 LINKING CONTROLS

Linking controls can be divided into:

**Debugging controls**
- DEBUGLINES / NODEBUGLINES
- DEBUGPUBLICS / NODEBUGPUBLICS
- DEBUGSYMBOLS / NODEBUGSYMBOLS

**Memory controls**
- FBRANCH
- FUNCTIONOVERLAY
- OVERLAY / NOOVERLAY
- RAMSIZE
- RESERVE
- XPAGE

**Other controls**
- CASE / NOCASE
- CHECK / NOCHECK
- MULTIPASS
- NAME

9.6.3 LOCATING CONTROLS

Locating controls give you the opportunity to control the strategy the linker uses to determine the absolute addresses of segments. You can use these controls to inform the linker about the order in which the segments should be located or at which absolute address a specific segment should be placed.

**Locating algorithm**

If locating controls are omitted the linker uses the following list of rules to locate the segments (ordered by precedence, grouped by memory type).

- Internal DATA segments:
  - Absolute segments BIT, DATA, IDATA and register banks.
  - Segments in the PRECEDE control in the invocation line.
  - Segments in a BIT control in the invocation line.
  - Relocatable DATA segments with the BIT-ADDRESSABLE attribute.
- Other relocatable BIT-segments.
- Segments in a DATA control in the invocation line.
- Other DATA segments.
- Segments in the IDATA control in the invocation line.
- Other IDATA segments, except ?STACK.
- Segments in the STACK control in the invocation line.
- ?STACK if it is in IDATA and not mentioned in another control.

- External DATA segments:
  - Absolute external data segments.
  - Segments in the XDATA control in the invocation line.
  - External data segment having the SHORT attribute.
  - Other relocatable XDATA segments.

- Code segments:
  - Absolute code segments.
  - Segments in the CODE control in the invocation line.
  - Other relocatable code segments.
  - CODE segments with the ROMDATA attribute.

**Locating controls syntax**

The locating controls have the following general format:

```
control ( segment [ , segment ]... )
```

where `segment` is:

```
segment_name [ ( address ) ]
```

The address part in the segment specification is optional. Mentioning a segment name without an address in a control, forces the linker to locate the segment at a specific time, according to the rules mentioned above, but leaving it up to the linker to determine the optimal starting address of the segment. If absolute addresses are given in a control, they should be in ascending order.

The following locating controls are supported:
Table 9–3: Locate controls

Bitaddressable segments are only allowed in the BIT–control. On all other places where data segments are mentioned, they must be unit–aligned. (A unit is the minimal addressable memory part in a segment: a bit in bit segments, a byte in all other segments)

Segment addresses in the BIT–control must be dividable by eight if the segment involved is of type DATA (bit addressable). If the segment is of bit–type, any bitaddress is allowed. The valid range for on–chip ram addresses (IDATA) depends on the physical limits of the target processor. The default size is 128. This value can be altered with the RAMSIZE control.

The STACK–control is meant to inform the linker which IDATA–segments must be located in the upper part of the IDATA space. The start address for the first segment in the STACK control is the first free memory location above the highest located segment in on–chip RAM.

The segment STACK is located in the uppermost part of IDATA space if it is not mentioned in any previous control. A segment with this name is created within the startup code of the C–51 compiler.

Data segments placed with any locating control are located as non–overlayable segments. This influences optimal locating by link51 when using the OVERLAY / FUNCTIONOVERLAY controls.
**Examples:**

1. **link51 mod1.obj, mod2.obj, mod3.obj to demo4.out**
   
   `precede( m1_seg, m2_seg ) bit( m2_dseg( 10H ))`
   
   This example shows the precede control. The linker first locates the segment `m1_seg` in memory. `m2_seg` is put at the next address available succeeding `m1_seg`. The segment `m2_dseg` is located at bitaddress 10H. This equals byte address 22H.

2. **link51 mod1.obj, mod2.obj, mod3.obj to demo5.out**
   
   `code( m1_cseg( 2000H ), m2_cseg, m3_cseg )`
   
   In the example above the code control is used to locate all the code segments above 2000H.

3. **link51 mod1.obj, mod2.obj, mod3.obj to demo6.out**
   
   `stack( m_stk )`
   
   Here the stack control is used to force the IDATA segment `m_stk` in the upper part of on-chip ram. `m_stk` is located in the highest internal ram locations of all IDATA segments.

### 9.6.4 LISTING CONTROLS

The linker can produce a map file. In a map file a memory map of the linked segments in the application is given. The listing controls allow you to specify what the contents of the map file should look like.

The following listing controls are recognized by the linker:

- BANKGRAPH
- GRAPH
- LINES/NOLINES
- MAP/NOMAP
- PAGEWIDTH
- PRINT/NOPRINT
- PUBLICS/NOPUBLICS
- SYMBOLS/NOSYMBOLS

### 9.6.5 DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF CONTROLS

With controls that can be set from within EDE, you will find a mouse icon that describes the corresponding action.
BANK

Control:

BANK( bank, segment [ (address) ] )

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Bank Switching. Enter a bank number, a code segment and optionally a locate address in the Locate segments in specific code bank field.

Arguments:

The bank number, a segment name with optionally a start address.

Abbreviation:

BA

Class:

Locating control

Default:

-

Description:

Locate a segment in a specified code bank in memory (address range 0–0FFFFH). The segment must be of type CODE. You can specify more than one BANK control.

The address part in the segment specification is optional. Mentioning a segment name without an address, forces the linker to locate the segment at a specific time, according to the default locating algorithm, but leaving it up to the linker to determine the optimal starting address of the segment. If absolute addresses are given, they should be in ascending order.

Example:

link51 mod1.obj, mod2.obj -banks 2 -o demo.out
bank( 1,m1_seg( 2000H )) bank( 2,m2_seg )

; Locate code segment m1_seg in bank 1 at 2000H and
; locate segment m2_seg in bank 2
Section 9.6.3, *Locating Controls*, describes the default locating algorithm and contains an overview of the locating controls.

BANKGRAPH

Control:

BANKGRAPH

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Bank Switching. Enable the option Include references and calls between code banks in the linker map file.

Abbreviation:

BG

Class:

Listing control

Default:

In EDE this option is enabled by default when code bank switching and map file generation are enabled.

Description:

You can use this control to include references and calls between different code banks in the linker mapfile (file.151).

Example:

link51 x.obj -banks 2 bankgraph pr("x.151")
BIT

Control:

BIT( segment [ (address) ] [, segment [ (address) ] ].. )

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Segments. Enter the segment and optionally a locate address in the Locate BIT segments field.

Arguments:

A segment name with optionally a start address.

Abbreviation:

BI

Class:

Locating control

Default:

-

Description:

Locate a segment in the bitaddressable on–chip data space (address range 0–7FH). The segment must be of type BIT, DATA or IDATA. Segment addresses in the BIT control must be dividable by eight if the segment involved is of type DATA (bit addressable). If the segment is of type BIT, any bitaddress is allowed.

The address part in the segment specification is optional. Mentioning a segment name without an address, forces the linker to locate the segment at a specific time, according to the default locating algorithm, but leaving it up to the linker to determine the optimal starting address of the segment. If absolute addresses are given, they should be in ascending order.

The valid range for on–chip ram addresses (IDATA) depends on the physical limits of the target processor. The default size is 128. This value can be altered with the RAMSIZE control.
Example:

```
link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj -o test.out bit( m2_dseg(10H))
```

; locate segment m2_dseg in bitaddressable memory
; starting at bitaddress 10H (is byte-address 22H)

Section 9.6.3, *Locating Controls*, describes the default locating algorithm and contains an overview of the locating controls.
CASE

Control:

CASE/NOCASE

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Linking. Enable or disable the option Link case sensitive.

Abbreviation:

CA/NOCA

Class:

Linking control

Default:

CASE

Description:

With these controls, the linker can be told to treat case sensitive or not. Programs written in the 'C' language produce case sensitive symbols.

Example:

link51 x.obj case

; link51 in case sensitive mode
CHECK

Control:
CHECK/NOCHECK

Abbreviation:
CH/NOCH

Class:
Linking control

Default:
NOCHECK

Description:
The linker accepts empty relocatable segments. These segments have no code bytes or a segment size greater than 0. Labels may have been defined in the segment, but they do not influence the segment size. link51 accepts these segments.

For compatibility reasons (Intel does not accept them) you can use the CHECK control to reject these segments if they occur. The default setting is NOCHECK. Empty segments are located at the address, following the highest addresses occupied, in the memory space they belong to.

Example:
link51 x.obj check

; link51 rejects empty segments
CODE

Control:

CODE(seg\text{ment} [ (address) ] [, seg\text{ment} [ (address) ]]... )

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Segments. Enter a code segment and optionally a locate address in the Locate CODE segments field.

Arguments:

A segment name with optionally a start address.

Abbreviation:

CO

Class:

Locating control

Default:

-

Description:

Locate a segment in code memory (address range 0–0FFFFH). The segment must be of type CODE.

The address part in the segment specification is optional. Mentioning a segment name without an address, forces the linker to locate the segment at a specific time, according to the default locating algorithm, but leaving it up to the linker to determine the optimal starting address of the segment. If absolute addresses are given, they should be in ascending order.

Example:

\texttt{link51 mod1.obj, mod2.obj, mod3.obj -o demo5.out}
\texttt{code( m1\_cseg( 2000H ), m2\_cseg, m3\_cseg )}

; Locate all the code segments above 2000H

Section 9.6.3, Locating Controls, describes the default locating algorithm and contains an overview of the locating controls.
COMMON

Control:

COMMON( segment [ (address) ] )

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Segments. Enter the segments to be located in the common area and optionally enter a locate address in the Locate segments common area field.

Arguments:

A segment name with optionally a start address.

Abbreviation:

CM

Class:

Locating control

Default:

-

Description:

Locate a segment in common area in memory. The segment must be of type CODE. You can specify more than one COMMON control.

The address part in the segment specification is optional. Mentioning a segment name without an address, forces the linker to locate the segment at a specific time, according to the default locating algorithm, but leaving it up to the linker to determine the optimal starting address of the segment. If absolute addresses are given, they should be in ascending order.

Example:

link51 mod1.obj, mod2.obj, mod3.obj -banks 2 -o demo.out
bank(1,ml_seg(2000H)) common(m2_seg) common(m3_seg)

; Locate code segment ml_seg in bank 1 at 2000H and
; locate segments m2_seg and m3_seg in the common area
Section 9.6.3, *Locating Controls*, describes the default locating algorithm and contains an overview of the locating controls.

**DATA**

**Control:**

DATA( segment [ (address) ] [, segment [ (address) ] ]... )

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Segments. Enter the segment and optionally a locate address in the Locate DATA segments field.

**Arguments:**

A segment name with optionally a start address.

**Abbreviation:**

DA

**Class:**

Locating control

**Default:**

-

**Description:**

Locate a segment in the direct addressable on-chip data space (address range 0–7FH). The segment must be of type DATA or IDATA.

The address part in the segment specification is optional. Mentioning a segment name without an address, forces the linker to locate the segment at a specific time, according to the default locating algorithm, but leaving it up to the linker to determine the optimal starting address of the segment. If absolute addresses are given, they should be in ascending order.

The valid range for on-chip ram addresses (IDATA) depends on the physical limits of the target processor. The default size is 128. This value can be altered with the RAMSIZE control.

**Example:**

`link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj -o test.out data( ml_dseg(30H))`

`; locate segment ml_dseg in DATA memory starting at address 30H`
Section 9.6.3, *Locating Controls*, describes the default locating algorithm and contains an overview of the locating controls.
**DEBUGLINES**

**Control:**

DEBUGLINES/NODEBUGLINES

From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options**... Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Linking**. Enable or disable the option **Include debug information for LINE records**.

**Abbreviation:**

DL/NODL

**Class:**

Linking control

**Default:**

DEBUGLINES

**Description:**

The C compiler generates `?LINE`-pseudos in the generated assembly text. The assembler creates line-records in the object file for each occurrence of this pseudo. If you want to suppress generation of these records in the absolute output file, the NODEBUGLINES control will do so.
DEBUGPUBLICS

Control:

DEBUGPUBLICS/NODEBUGPUBLICS

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Linking. Enable or disable the option Include debug information for PUBLIC symbols.

Abbreviation:

DP/NODP

Class:

Linking control

Default:

DEBUGPUBLICS

Description:

This control causes the linker to generate public symbol definition records in the output file. NODEBUGPUBLICS disables the generation of public symbol records.
DEBUGSYMBOLS

Control:

DEBUGSYMBOLS/NODEBUGSYMBOLS

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Linking. Enable or disable the option Include debug information for LOCAL symbols.

Abbreviation:

DS/NODS

Class:

Linking control

Default:

DEBUGSYMBOLS

Description:

This control can be used to start generation of symbolic information in the output file. DEBUGSYMBOLS starts generation of symbol records for local symbols. The negated version causes the linker to suppress the output of these records.
FBRANCH

Control:

FBRANCH( c_segm [,c_segm ]... )

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Overlay. Fill in the code segments that have to be handled as separate branches by the overlaying mechanism.

Arguments:

One or more CODE segment names.

Abbreviation:

FB

Class:

Linking control

Default:

-

Description:

During execution of the main loop interrupts may occur at any moment. This means that data areas used by the interrupt routines may not be overlayed with data areas used by the main thread. The linker already prevents overlaying of interrupts that use a different register bank than the default one. However, for interrupts using the default register bank it is required to use the FBRANCH control in order for the linker to prevent overlaying of their data areas.

Example:

Suppose we have defined the following interrupt function in module int0.c: _interrupt(1) void ISR0( void ); then the following command will prevent data areas used by the interrupt routine to be overlayed by ones used by the main routine.

    link51 main.obj int0.obj -o demo.out FO FBRANCH(INT0_ISR0)
FUNCTIONOVERLAY

Control:

FUNCTIONOVERLAY[ ( calling-scheme [, calling-scheme ]... ) ]

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Overlay. Select the Function based overlaying for C radio button or select User specified overlaying and fill in your own overlay control.

Arguments:

A calling-scheme is defined as follows:

\[
\text{code-segment-name} \text{ call-indicator } \text{code-segment-name}
\]

where,

\[
\text{code-segment-name} \quad \text{is the name of one of the code segments created by asm51, or *}, \text{referring to all valid code segments in the program.}
\]

\[
\text{call-indicator} \quad > \quad \text{(all hosts), or} \quad ] \quad \text{(PC and UNIX only)}
\]

Abbreviation:

FO

Class:

Linking control

Default:

Function overlay is off

Description:

The control FUNCTIONOVERLAY cannot be used in combination with the control OVERLAY.

The control FUNCTIONOVERLAY can be used for C-51 only.
link51 is an overlaying linker. This means that the linker is capable of overlaying segments within the same range in internal ram locations. Two segments are overlayable if the following conditions are met:

- The two segments have the same memory type.
- The segments are marked overlayable and use the same register bank (declared with the overlay control in the assembly text).
- The segments belong to disjoint functions which do not directly or indirectly call each other. This check is done by using a naming convention for all segments in the program.

Two code segments both using variables located in internal ram can use the same address ranges for these variables if the two code segments are disjoint. That means they do not call each other directly or indirectly. Because only code segments can reference each other, while the used data space for these code segments should be overlaid, we need to know which code segment uses which data segment. Therefore, link51 uses a naming convention for all segments.

The name of the code segment using overlayable data should be named \textit{func\_PR}. For function overlay, all used data segments for this code segment should be declared \textit{"overlay"} and use the following naming convention.

- Bit Segment: \textit{func\_BI}
- Bit addressable Segment: \textit{func\_BA}
- Data Segment: \textit{func\_DA}
- Idata Segment: \textit{func\_ID}
- Xdata SHORT Segment: \textit{func\_PD}
- Xdata Segment: \textit{func\_XD}

All data segments not using this naming convention will not be overlaid.

If two code segments do not call each other, their variables are not 'alive' at the same time, so they can be put on the same addresses. The smallest unit of internal data that is possibly overlaid is a segment. The TASKING assembler \texttt{asm51} gives you the opportunity to declare a segment to be overlayable.

Calls from one code segment to another can be detected by the linker via relocatable “call” instructions in the object files. If these connections between code segments exist the linker will not overlay the data segments declared to these code segments.
A problem can arise if the calls are invisible for the linker. Then it might be that two data segments are overlaid and used at the same time by the application. This will lead to unpredictable behavior of the program. For this purpose the call–indicators can be used. They are meant to inform the linker about the calling structure in the application the linker cannot deduce from the relocatable “call” instructions of the object files. Note that the call–indicator does not overrule the normal call it is an add–on to the existing call structure.

When using FUNCTIONOVERLAY recursive relations between segments may not occur. When the linker finds such a relation, it will abort immediately. Note however that a segment making a call to itself is allowed by the linker. **link51** also has an option to print a call graph to show the relation between the code segments (See the **GRAPH** control).

**Examples:**

1. `link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj,mod3.obj to demo4.out
   functionoverlay`

2. `link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj,mod3.obj to demo5.out
   "functionoverlay( segm3 ] mseg1 )"`

3. `link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj,mod3.obj to demo6.out
   "functionoverlay( segm1 ] * )"

The first example shows the simplest use of the functionoverlay control. All segments in the three modules that are marked overlayable and conform to the requirements mentioned above will be overlaid by the linker.

The second example shows how to inform the linker that there is a connection between two segments out of any of the modules, which is invisible for the linker. Suppose there is code like:

```
jmp @a + dptr
```

in some code segment (e.g. C51 produces this for indirect function calls). If **dptr** contains an address of a code label in the first segment, the code above is an indirect jump into a second segment. If there are no other call references between these two segments the linker might erroneously conclude that overlaying data segments of these functions is correct. This is not true. To prevent the linker from making this false assumption, the functionoverlay control is used to explicitly inform the linker about the calling structure of **segm1** and **segm3** (**SEGM1_PR** and **SEGM3_PR**).
The third example shows how to prevent the linker from overlaying any segment in internal data mentioned in the first segment. The 'segm1 > *' (all hosts), 'segm1 ] *' (PC/UNIX) calling-scheme causes the linker to assume references between segm1 and any other code segment in the application. This causes no overlay for segm1. The assumption is made that the calling scheme 'segm1 > *' or 'segm1 ] *' does not introduce recursion. This is not checked.

**link51** only recognizes 'CALL' instructions between segments, not 'JMP' instructions. Within a complete C-51 application, the only 'JMP' instruction causing incorrect overlaying of data is generated when using indirect function calls within the C-application (as described earlier).

When handwritten assembly code is linked together with C-generated code, all segment crossing 'JMP' instructions should be defined to the linker with the functionoverlay command. Otherwise no guarantee can be given that overlaying of data is correct.

See also the controls FBRANCH and OVERLAY.
GRAPH

Control:

GRAPH[number]

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Map File. Enable the option Include C-51 function call graph in map file and optionally enable the option Use extensive version of C-51 function call graph.

Arguments:

Optionally the number 0 or 1.

Abbreviation:

GR

Class:

Listing control

Default:

GRAPH(0)

Description:

This control only has effect when the control FUNCTIONOVERLAY is specified too. A call graph of the code segments will be reported. One of two styles can be chosen:

GRAPH or GRAPH(0):

Each CODE segment will be displayed followed by the CODE segment directly called by it. This is the default.

GRAPH(1):

Each so called “root”-segment (i.e. a CODE segment not called by another segment) is displayed. A complete calling tree will follow. When recursive calls occur (not allowed when using FUNCTIONOVERLAY) this will be reported.

Examples:

link51 module1.obj functionoverlay graph
IDATA

Control:

IDATA( segment [ (address) ] [, segment [ (address) ] ] ... )

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Segments. Enter the segment and optionally a locate address in the Locate IDATA segments field.

Arguments:

A segment name with optionally a start address.

Abbreviation:

ID

Class:

Locating control

Default:

-

Description:

Locate a segment in the indirectly addressable on-chip data space (address range 0–FFH). The segment must be of type IDATA.

The address part in the segment specification is optional. Mentioning a segment name without an address, forces the linker to locate the segment at a specific time, according to the default locating algorithm, but leaving it up to the linker to determine the optimal starting address of the segment. If absolute addresses are given, they should be in ascending order.

The valid range for on-chip ram addresses (IDATA) depends on the physical limits of the target processor. The default size is 128. This value can be altered with the RAMSIZE control.

Example:

`link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj -o test.out idata( ml_seg(80H))`

; locate segment ml_seg in IDATA memory starting at address 80H
Section 9.6.3, *Locating Controls*, describes the default locating algorithm and contains an overview of the locating controls.
LINES

Control:
LINES/NOLINES

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Map File. Enable or disable the option Include LINE information in the map file.

Abbreviation:
LI/NOLI

Class:
Listing control

Default:
NOLINES

Description:
The LINES control enables printing of line numbers with their corresponding addresses in the link map file. NOLINES prevents the printing of line numbers.

Example:
link51 x.obj lines

; generate line numbers in map file
MAP

Control:

MAP/NOMAP

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Map File. Enable or disable the option Include a link map in the map file.

Abbreviation:

MA/NOMA

Class:

Listing control

Default:

MAP

Description:

This control can be used to enable or prevent generation of a link map in the map file. Print must be enabled. If NOPRINT is specified the MAP-setting is ignored.

Example:

link51 x.obj nomap

; do not generate link map in map file
MULTIPASS

Control:

MULTIPASS

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Linking. Enable or disable the option Use multipass library rescanning.

Abbreviation:

MP

Class:

Linking control

Default:

On the command line: one scan through library. When you use EDE this control is enabled by default.

Description:

By default the linker only scans once through a library. This means that if an object in a library refers to another object which already has been scanned before (without being extracted) it will not be scanned again. With the linker control MULTIPASS, the linker rescans libraries to resolve externals using preceding objects. This way you do not have to worry about the library order.

Example:

`link51 a.obj b.obj c.obj mp`
NAME

Control:
   NAME(module-name)

Abbreviation:
   NA

Class:
   Linking control

Default:
   -

Description:
   The name control is recognized by the linker but no further action is taken. The module name is not written into the output file. The output filename uniquely identifies the output of the linker.
OVERLAY

Control:

OVERLAY ( calling-scheme [ , calling-scheme ] ... )
NOOVERLAY

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Overlay. Select the User specified overlaying radio button and fill in your own overlay control.

Arguments:

A calling-scheme is defined as follows:

\[ \text{module-name} \quad \text{call-indicator} \quad \text{module-name} \]

where,

\[ \text{module-name} \quad \text{is the name of one of the modules created by \texttt{asm51}, or *}, \text{referring to all valid modules in the program.} \]

\[ \text{call-indicator} \quad > \quad \text{(all hosts), or} \]
\[ \text{} \quad ] \quad \text{(PC and UNIX only)} \]

Abbreviation:

OL/NOOL

Class:

Linking control

Default:

NOOVERLAY

Description:

The control OVERLAY cannot be used in combination with the control FUNCTIONOVERLAY.

\texttt{link51} is an overlaying linker. This means that the linker is capable of overlaying segments within the same range in internal ram locations. Two segments are overlayable if the following conditions are met:

- The two segments have the same memory type.
• The segments are marked overlayable and use the same register bank. (declared with the overlay control in the assembly text)
• The segments belong to disjoint modules. This means that symbols external in one module may not be resolved in the other. The linker only checks this property for code references.

Two modules both using variables located in internal ram can use the same address ranges for these variables if the two modules are disjoint. That means they do not call each other directly or indirectly.

If two modules do not call each other, their variables are not ‘alive’ at the same time, so they can be put on the same addresses. The smallest unit of internal data that is possibly overlaid is a segment. The TASKING assembler \texttt{asm51} gives you the opportunity to declare a segment to be overlayable.

Calls or jumps from one module to another can be detected by the linker via \texttt{PUBLIC/EXTERNAL} declaration of code labels. If these connections between modules exist, the linker will not overlay the segments declared in these modules.

A problem can arise if the calls are invisible for the linker. Then it might be that two data segments are overlaid and used at the same time by the application. This will lead to unpredictable behavior of the program. For this purpose the call-indicators can be used. They are meant to inform the linker about the calling structure in the application the linker cannot deduce from the \texttt{PUBLIC/EXTERNAL} definitions.

\textbf{Examples:}

1. \texttt{link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj,mod3.obj to demo4.out overlay}
2. \texttt{link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj,mod3.obj to demo5.out "overlay( mod3 ] mod1 )"}
3. \texttt{link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj,mod3.obj to demo6.out "overlay( mod1 ] * )"}

The first example shows the simplest use of the overlay control. All segments in the three modules that are marked overlayable and conform to the requirements mentioned above will be overlaid by the linker.

The second example shows how to inform the linker that there is a connection between the third and the first module which is invisible for the linker. Suppose in the third module there is code like:
jmp @a + dptr

If \( dptr \) contains an address of a code label in the first module, the code above is an indirect jump into the first module. If there are no other \texttt{PUBLIC/EXTERNAL} references between these two modules the linker might erroneously conclude that overlaying data segments of these modules is correct. This is not true. To prevent the linker from making this false assumption, the overlay control is used to explicitly inform the linker about the calling structure of \texttt{mod1} and \texttt{mod3}.

The third example shows how to prevent the linker from overlaying any segment in internal data mentioned in the first module. The \'(mod1 \rightarrow *)\' calling–scheme causes the linker to assume references between mod1 and any other module in the application. This causes no overlay for the segments in the first module.
**PAGEWIDTH**

**Control:**

PAGExWIDTH(*width*)

From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...** Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Map File**. Enter the number of characters in the **Page width (characters per line)** field.

**Arguments:**

The number of characters per line.

**Abbreviation:**

PW

**Class:**

Listing control

**Default:**

PAGExWIDTH(78)

**Description:**

The PAGEWIDTH control specifies how many characters can be written on one line in the map file. Any value between 72 and 132 is allowed. The default value is 78.

**Example:**

```plaintext
link51 module1.obj print( mod1.151 ) pw( 80 )
```

; set page width to 80 characters
**PRECEDE**

**Control:**

PRECEDE( segment [ (address) ] [, segment [ (address) ] ]... )

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Segments. Enter the segment and optionally a locate address in the User PRECEDE control field.

**Arguments:**

A segment name with optionally a start address.

**Abbreviation:**

PC

**Class:**

Locating control

**Default:**

-

**Description:**

Locate a segment in the on-chip data space (address range 0–2FH). The *segment* must be of type DATA or IDATA.

The address part in the segment specification is optional. Mentioning a segment name without an address, forces the linker to locate the segment at a specific time, according to the default locating algorithm, but leaving it up to the linker to determine the optimal starting address of the segment. If absolute addresses are given, they should be in ascending order.

The valid range for on-chip ram addresses (IDATA) depends on the physical limits of the target processor. The default size is 128. This value can be altered with the RAMSIZE control.

**Example:**

```plaintext
link51 mod1.obj, mod2.obj, mod3.obj -o demo.out
precede( m1_seg, m2_seg ) bit( m2_dseg( 10H ))
```
The linker first locates the segment \texttt{m1\_seg} in memory. \texttt{m2\_seg} is put at the next address available succeeding \texttt{m1\_seg}. The segment \texttt{m2\_dseg} is located at bitaddress 10H. This equals byte address 22H.

Section 9.6.3, \textit{Locating Controls}, describes the default locating algorithm and contains an overview of the locating controls.
PRINT

Control:

PRINT(file)/NOPRINT

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Map File. Enable or disable the option Generate a linker map file (.l51).

Arguments:

Optionally the map file name.

Abbreviation:

PR/NOPR

Class:

Listing control

Default:

PRINT(output-file.l51)

Description:

The filename determines where the listing information will be written. The filename may be omitted. Then the map filename is created from the basename of the output file and the extension .151. NOPRINT prevents the linker from generating any listing information. The default setting is PRINT.

Examples:

link51 module1.obj print( mod1.151 )
; map filename is mod1.151
PUBLICS

Control:

PUBLICS /NOPUBLICS

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Map File. Enable or disable the option Include PUBLIC symbol information in the map file.

Abbreviation:

PL / NOPL

Class:

Listing control

Default:

NOPUBLICS

Description:

The PUBLICS control enables printing of public symbol names and their corresponding addresses in the link map file. NOPUBLICS disables the printing of public symbols.

Examples:

link51 x.obj y.obj pl
; print public symbols in link map file x.151
RAMSIZE

Control:

RAMSIZE(size)

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Processor entry and select Memory. Select a size in the On-chip data RAM size (0–256) field.

Arguments:

The size of internal RAM (in bytes).

Abbreviation:

RS

Class:

Linking control

Default:

RAMSIZE( 128 )

Description:

The ramsize control can be used to inform the linker about the size of internal data ram (in bytes). The default value assumed by the linker is 128 (8051 on-chip ram size). The valid range for ramsize values is 128–256.

Example:

link51 x.obj rs( 200 )

; link51 assumes an internal RAM of 200 bytes
RESERVE

Control:

RESERVE(memory_type( start_address, end_address )
 [, memory_type( start_address, end_address ) ]... )

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Reserved Areas. Enter an address range in the Reserve memory_type memory field. You can enter several address ranges by separating them with a semi–colon ';'. Optionally, enable the option Reserve first byte of XDATA to prevent pointers on address 0.

Arguments:

A memory type and an address range to be excluded from locating. memory_type can be:

- CODE (CO)
- XDATA (XD)
- IDATA (ID)
- DATA (DA)
- BIT (BI)

Abbreviation:

RE

Class:

Linking control

Default:

All memory is assumed available.

Description:

With this control you can tell the linker which address ranges should not be used to locate code or data.

When a certain part of code/ram space is already in use by a previously programmed EPROM or by some other hardware, use this control to specify the linker it cannot use the specified address space.
A specified address range \((\text{start\_address, end\_address})\) is reserved starting at the first given address up to and including the last address specified. It is possible to specify multiple address ranges for the same memory type.

**Examples:**

```
link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj -o demo.out
  reserve(xdata( 0, 400H ), code( 0, 2000H ),
  code( 3000H, 4000H ) )
```

External RAM addresses 0 up to and including address 400H cannot be used. Code range 0 up to 2000H and the code range 3000H up to 4000H also cannot be used.

Absolute segments and segments placed with a linker control are placed into the reserved areas when specified. In this case a memory overlap is reported.
STACK

Control:

STACK( segment [ (address) ] [, segment [ (address) ] ]... )

Arguments:

A segment name with optionally a start address.

Abbreviation:

ST

Class:

Locating control

Default:

-

Description:

Locate a segment in the indirectly addressable on-chip data space (address range 0–0FFH). The segment must be of type IDATA.

The STACK control is meant to inform the linker which IDATA segments must be located in the upper part of the IDATA space. The start address for the first segment in the STACK control is the first free memory location above the highest located segment in on-chip RAM.

The segment ?STACK is located in the uppermost part of IDATA space if it is not mentioned in any previous control. A segment with this name is created within the startup code of the C-51 compiler.

The address part in the segment specification is optional. Mentioning a segment name without an address, forces the linker to locate the segment at a specific time, according to the default locating algorithm, but leaving it up to the linker to determine the optimal starting address of the segment. If absolute addresses are given, they should be in ascending order.

The valid range for on-chip ram addresses (IDATA) depends on the physical limits of the target processor. The default size is 128. This value can be altered with the RAMSIZE control.
Example:

```
link51 mod1.obj, mod2.obj, mod3.obj -o demo.out stack( m_stk )
```

The stack control is used to force the IDATA segment `m_stk` in the upper part of on-chip ram. `m_stk` is located in the highest internal ram locations of all IDATA segments.

Section 9.6.3, *Locating Controls*, describes the default locating algorithm and contains an overview of the locating controls.
SYMBOLS

Control:

SYMBOLS/NOSYMBOLS

From the Project menu, select Project Options... Expand the Linker entry and select Map File. Enable or disable the option Include LOCAL symbol information in the map file.

Abbreviation:

SB/NOSB

Class:

Listing control

Default:

NOSYMBOLS

Description:

With the SYMBOLS control local symbols can be printed in the link map file. NOSYMBOLS prevents the printing of local symbols.

Examples:

`link51 x.obj y.obj sb ; print local symbols in link map file x.l51`
**TO**

**Control:**

TO *filename*

**Arguments:**

An output filename.

**Default:**

*a.out*

**Description:**

Use *filename* as output filename of the linker. If this control is omitted, the default filename is *a.out*. This is the same as the `-o` option.

**Example:**

To create the output file *test.out* instead of *a.out*, enter:

```
link51 test.obj to test.out
```
**XDATA**

**Control:**

\[ \text{XDATA( segment [ (address) ] [, segment [ (address) ] ]... )} \]

From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...** Expand the **Linker** entry and select **Segments**. Enter the segment and optionally a locate address in the **Locate XDATA segments** field.

**Arguments:**

A segment name with optionally a start address.

**Abbreviation:**

XD

**Class:**

Locating control

**Default:**

- 

**Description:**

Locate a segment in external RAM space (address range 0–0FFFFH). The **segment** must be of type XDATA.

The address part in the segment specification is optional. Mentioning a segment name without an address, forces the linker to locate the segment at a specific time, according to the default locating algorithm, but leaving it up to the linker to determine the optimal starting address of the segment. If absolute addresses are given, they should be in ascending order.

**Example:**

\[ \text{link51 mod1.obj,mod2.obj -o test.out xdata( ml_seg(OFF00H), m2_seg)} \]

; locate segments ml_seg and m2_seg in XDATA memory
; starting at address OFF00H

Section 9.6.3, **Locating Controls**, describes the default locating algorithm and contains an overview of the locating controls.
**XPAGE**

**Control:**

XPAGE(*page_number*)

⚠️ From the **Project** menu, select **Project Options...** Expand the **Processor** entry and select **Startup Code**. Enter a page number in the **External RAM page to be used for paged data (_pdat)_** field.

**Arguments:**

A value between 0 and 255.

**Abbreviation:**

XP

**Class:**

Linking control

**Default:**

0

**Description:**

XDATA segments having the SHORT attribute will be located in a page of auxiliary memory. By default the first 256–bytes page will be used for this. You can use the XPAGE control to specify a different page in auxiliary memory.
9.7 LINK51 OUTPUT

The linker creates different sorts of output:

- map file
- output file
- error messages

The map file contains information about the absolute object file produced by the linker. The following items appear in the map file:

- The way link51 was invoked.
- The input files the linker has read. If an input file is a library, this is mentioned.
- The link map.
- A list of ignored segments
- A list of unresolved external symbols.

The name for the map file is derived from the output filename. The extension (if present) of this filename is substituted by ‘.l51’.
9.8  BANK SWITCHING

**link51** supports code memory banking. With this technique you can extend your code memory beyond 64Kb.

When specifying multiple banks the linker automatically locates segments across all code banks. The problem that arises is when a function in one bank needs to call a function that is located in another bank. Since the 8051 instruction set supports no 24-bit call or jump instruction another solution is needed. The linker solves the problem by automatically inserting a piece of code called a 'stub routine'. Instead of calling the remote function directly, the stub routine is called. The stub routine on its turn calls a special bank switching routine, passing the new code bank number and the offset of the remote function within that bank. The bank switching routine then switches to the new code bank, calls the function, and on return switches back to the original bank and function. An example of a possible stub code implementation is shown below.

**Example**

```assembly
__LK_STUB SEGMENT CODE
RSEG  __LK_STUB
__LK_STUB_ENTRY:
    MOV   DPTR,#__LK_FUNCTION_ADDRESS ; pass 16-bit offset
    JMP   __LK_BANKSWITCH
```

Each time this stub routine is inserted the variable `__LK_FUNCTION_ADDRESS` will be replaced with the 16-bit offset address of the function to be called. And the `JMP` to `__LK_BANKSWITCH` will be replaced with a `JMP` to the right bank switch routine (for example `__LK_BANKSWITCH3` to switch to bank 3).

All inter-code bank calls will be detected by the linker and will be replaced with such a stub routine. When the same remote function is called several times from one bank the same stub code will be used.

When there is a large number of inter-code bank calls the number of stubs will also be large. Therefore, it is best to keep the stub routine as small as possible. So, instead of the previous stub routine another method can be used. Instead of calling one general routine passing the new code bank, the bank switch routine will be copied for every bank, and the specific routine will be called that switches to the required new bank.

If you use EDE, you can enter bank switching information in the **Linker | Bank Switching** entry of the **Project | Project Options...** dialog.
Each stub routine calls a routine which performs the actual code bank switch and calls the function in the new code bank. The following example shows an implementation of such a bank switching routine. The example assumes SFR P1 is used to select the code bank. If you use another hardware implementation, adapt the routine likewise.

**Example**

```assembly
__BANKSW    SEGMENT CODE
    RSEG   __BANKSW
__LK_BANKSWITCH:
    PUSH   P1              ; push current bank
    CALL   _bankswitch
    POP    P1              ; switch back to original bank
    RET

_bankswitch:
    MOV    P1,#__LK_FUNCTION_BANK  ; switch to new bank
    CLR    A
    JMP    @A+DPTR
```

The stub routine and bank switching routine are present in the file `stub.src` in the `lib/src` directory. This file is part of the C library.

### 9.8.1 WRITING YOUR OWN BANK SWITCH ROUTINE

If you do not want the default bank switch routines you can write your own routines. You have to rewrite two routines at the most, the stub routine and the bank switch routine. You can use the file `stub.asm` in the `lib/src` directory as a starting point.

**Writing your own stub routine**

Requirements:

- use a unique segment name that is not used elsewhere.
- the segment must contain the label `__LK_STUB_ENTRY`. This label is the entry jumped to.
- the segment must contain the variable `__LK_FUNCTION_ADDRESS`. This variable will contain the 16-bit offset of the remote function.
Writing your own bank switch routine

More likely than replacing the default stub routine is changing the bank switch routine. The default routine assumes that SFR P1 is used to select the code bank. If you have an implementation that uses a different SFR, or one that uses, for instance, an external data address you have to rewrite the bank switching routine.

Requirements:

- use a unique segment name that is not used elsewhere.
- use the variable __LK_FUNCTION_BANK in this routine. The routine will be copied for each code bank, and in each copy the variable will be replaced with the (8-bit) code bank number.

9.8.2 COMMON AREA

Because interrupts can occur at any moment, the interrupt vectors need to be present in each code bank. This is also the case for the bank switching routine, which must be reachable at any time from any code bank. Instead of copying all this code in every bank, you have to define an area that is independent of the selected code bank, the so-called ‘common area’. Since a function in the common area can be called from any code bank without a stub-routine it can also be used to locate functions that are called very often, decreasing both access time as well as code size.

You can use the –common option to define the size of the common area (starting at code address 0). You can define segments to be located in the common area with the COMMON control.

9.8.3 LOCATING ALGORITHM

When multiple code banks are used the linker will use a different locating algorithm than the default for Code segments (see section 9.6.3, Locating Controls).

The following locating order is used:

1. Absolute code segments
2. Segments in the COMMON control in the invocation line
3. Segments in the BANK control in the invocation line
4. ROMDATA segments
5. Related segments, linked due to code relocatables
6. Other relocatable segments

When a certain CODE segment has references to another segment, for instance to access constant ROM data, it is absolutely necessary they are located in the same bank. If not, then accessing the constant ROM data will result in data in the wrong bank being retrieved.

Since the program counter of the 8051 is only 16–bits it is not possible to cross 64Kb borders without using the bank switching routine. The linker therefore ensures that no segment will be located over a 64Kb boundary.

**9.8.4 FUNCTION POINTERS**

Since function pointers are only 16–bit the compiler uses a special method to support 24–bit functions pointers (including the bank number). All 24–bit function pointers are gathered in a table that will be located in the common area. That way the entries in this function pointer table can be accessed using only 16–bit pointers.

So, actually an extra indirection is used. Normally the __ICALL run–time routine is called to handle the call through a function pointer, but in order to handle the extra indirection level a different __IICALL run–time routine is called when bank switching is enabled. Since this routine also handles the actual bank switch it is required to change it dependent on the hardware bank switch method (SFR P1 by default).

The __IICALL runtime routine is present in the file iicall.src in the lib/src directory. This file is part of the C library.

**9.8.5 RESOURCES**

You have take into account the following resources when using code bank switching:

- code for the bank switching routine
- extra stub code for each call from one bank to another bank
- extra stack space for each call to another bank
9.9 LINKER SPECIAL LABELS

The linker/locator assigns addresses to the following labels when they are referenced:

\[ \_\_LK\_B\_name : \text{Begin of segment } name. \]
\[ \_\_LK\_E\_name : \text{End of segment } name. \]
\[ \_\_LK\_L\_name : \text{Size of segment } name. \]

You can use these labels to obtain the addresses of segment \textit{name} in a program.

The relation between the three labels is:

\[ \_\_LK\_E\_name = \_\_LK\_B\_name + \_\_LK\_L\_name \]
9.10 LINKING WITH LIBRARIES

If you are linking from libraries, only those objects you need are extracted from the library. This implies that if you invoke the linker like:

```
link51 mylib.lib
```

nothing is linked and no output file will be produced, because there are no unresolved symbols when the linker searches through `mylib.lib`.

The position of the library is important, if you specify:

```
link51 -lc51s myobj.obj, mylib.lib
```

the linker starts with searching the system library `c51s.lib` without unresolved symbols, thus no module will be extracted. After that, the user object and library are linked. When finished, all symbols from the C library remain unresolved. So, the correct invocation is:

```
link51 myobj.obj, mylib.lib -lc51s
```

All symbols which remain unresolved after linking `myobj.obj` and `mylib.lib` will be searched for in the system library `c51s.lib`.

The link order for objects, user libraries and system libraries is the order in which they appear at the command line. Objects are always linked, object modules in libraries are only linked if they are needed.

**Multipass support (rescan libraries)**

By default the linker only scans once through a library. This means that if an object in a library refers to another object which already has been scanned before (without being extracted) it will not be scanned again. With the linker control `MULTIPASS`, the linker rescans libraries to resolve externals using preceding objects. When you use EDE this control is enabled by default.
9.11 LINKING OMF51 OBJECTS AND LIBRARIES

This section describes how to link OMF51 object modules with link51. In particular the following subjects will be discussed:

- case sensitivity
- object format
- module selection
- backward referencing in libraries

9.11.1 CASE SENSITIVITY

CASE/NOCASE

In the OMF51 object format, all symbols are always in uppercase. In the a.out object format, symbols are case sensitive, i.e. names in uppercase and lowercase are distinct. The TASKING ‘C’ compiler generates case sensitive labels (the C-function names in the C-library are all in lowercase).

So, a call from an object module in OMF51 format to a function which is in the library of the TASKING ‘C’ compiler would be impossible. Therefore it may be required to use the ’NOCASE’ control of the linker.

Be aware that this control may introduce naming conflicts. In the ‘C’ language it is possible to create two functions with the names ’func’ and ’Func’, which are distinct names. When using the ’NOCASE’ control the names will not be distinct anymore.

9.11.2 OBJECT FORMAT

The linker link51 reads files in the OMF51 format used by Intel compilers, assemblers and linkers. The output file of link51 is always in the COFF-a.out-format described before. Libraries in the OMF51 library format are accepted also.

High level language debug information represented in the OMF51 object module will not be placed in the output file of the linker link51. High level source debugging can only be done on modules compiled with the TASKING C-51 compiler.
Assembly level debug information is present. All symbols are placed in the output file of link51.

The a.out file created by the linker can be formatted to the OMF51 format with use of the formatter omf51.

### 9.11.3 MODULE SELECTION

The Intel linker allows you to select one or more object modules from an object file. The TASKING linker link51 does not support this feature. If an object file containing more than one object module is linked with link51, only the first module in this file is linked.

### 9.11.4 BACKWARD REFERENCING IN LIBRARIES

The TASKING linker link51 has no library manager for OMF51 libraries. Only existing libraries can be linked.

The linker scans the object modules in a library in the first phase. If a module contains public definitions of symbols that are unresolved so far, the module is included in the second phase.

If such a module itself contains external symbols, the definitions of these symbols are first sought in the modules that are found in the remainder of the library. After the linker has scanned all modules in the library, it does a rescan of the library to see if one of the previous modules contains a definition of the symbols. Only when no more external definitions can be resolved by any object module in the library, the linker will continue with the next file (object or library) given in the linker command.

Rescanning of a library is not done for libraries in a.out format.
9.12 LINKER IMPLEMENTATION

This chapter describes the differences between the Intel linker and the TASKING link51. In particular the following subjects are discussed:

- cross-reference
- object format
- controls
- module selection
- backward referencing in libraries

9.12.1 CROSS-REFERENCE

**IXREF / NOIXREF**

The cross-reference control is not supported by link51.

9.12.2 OBJECT FORMAT

The linker link51 generates files in modified version of the COFF-a.out-format used by other TCP assemblers and linkers. Linker input files may be in the a.out format or the OMF51 format (see section 9.11, Linking OMF51 Objects and Libraries).

The COFF-a.out format has been extended to support the Intel defined assembly language constructs. The changes of the format can be found in the extension part of the format description.

The extension records are redefined to store new information in the relocatable object files and the absolute load files. Utility programs like dmp51 and the object conversion programs have been adapted to be able to read these files.

In the TCP-a.out file format the contents of the code part of a section is always contiguous, so there is at most one code part per section. The Intel approach towards segments is different: there may be discontiguous ranges in an absolute segment.

The dmp51 program displays the contents of a segment as one contiguous block. On each line a code address is prepended. This address is calculated from the segment start address and the relative offset in the
code–part. In the new format this approach is not suitable. The start addresses displayed by `dmp51` may therefore be not correct.

### 9.12.3 CONTROLS

A number of controls, defined by Intel, are not supported by `link51`. The linker gives a warning and the control is ignored. The following controls are not supported:

- GENERATED / NOGENERATED
- LIBRARIES / NOLIBRARIES
- IXREF / NOIXREF

### 9.12.4 MODULE SELECTION

The Intel linker allows you to select one or more object modules from an object file. This is useful because the OMF51–file format allows you to append a number of object modules into a file without use of a library manager. The TASKING a.out format is built upon the assumption that an object file contains one object module. The selection of modules from a file becomes meaningless in this approach.

### 9.12.5 BACKWARD REFERENCING IN LIBRARIES

The TASKING linker `link51` is shipped with a library manager (`ar51`). This archiver allows you to build libraries of object modules. The manual page of this program, enclosed in this manual, describes how this should be done.

The linker scans the object modules in a library in the first phase. If a module contains public definitions of symbols that are unresolved so far, the module is included in the second phase.

If such a module itself contains external symbol declarations, the definitions of these symbols are sought only in the modules that are found in the remainder of the library. The linker does not rescan the library to see if one of the previous modules contains the definition of the symbol. Creating a library, you should pay attention to the order the archiver puts the modules in.
10.1 OVERVIEW

The following utilities are supplied with the Cross-Assembler for the 8051 which can be useful at various stages during program development.

**ar51**  A librarian facility, which can be used to create and maintain object libraries.

**dmp51**  A utility program to report the contents of an object file.

**flashsilabs51**  A utility for the Silicon Laboratories 8051 family to flash an IEEE-695, OMF51, Intel Hex or Motorola S-Records file.

**flashphytec**  A utility for the Phytec 8051 target boards to flash an IEEE-695, OMF51, Intel Hex or Motorola S-Records file.

**flashwinbond**  A utility for the Winbond 8051 target boards to flash an IEEE-695, OMF51, Intel Hex or Motorola S-Records file.

**ieee51**  A program which formats files generated by the assembler to the IEEE format (used by a debugger).

**ihex51**  A program which formats files generated by the linker to Intel Hex Format Format.

**omf51**  A formatter to translate TCP a.out formatted files into absolute OMF51 format.

**srec51**  A program which formats files generated by the linker to Motorola S-record Format.

**mk51**  A make utility program to maintain, update, and reconstruct groups of programs.

When you use a **UNIX** shell (Bourne shell, C-shell), arguments containing special characters (such as ’( )’ and ’?’) must be enclosed with “” or escaped. The −? option (in the C-shell) becomes: “−?” or −\?.

The utilities are explained on the following pages.
10.2 ARCHIVER: AR51

Name

**ar51** archive and library maintainer

Syntax

```
ar51 d | p | q | s | t | x [vl] archive files...
ar51 r | m [a | b | i posname][cvl] archive files...
ar51 -Q file
ar51 -V
ar51 -?  ( UNIX C-shell: ”-?” or –? )
```

Description

**ar51** maintains groups of files (modules) combined into a single archive file. Its main use is to create and update library files as used by the assembler/linker. It can be used, though, for any similar purpose.

The **ar51** archiver uses a full ASCII module header. This makes archives portable and allows them to be edited. The header only contains name and size information.

A file produced by **ar51** starts with the line

```
!<ar>!
```

followed by the constituent files, each preceded by a file header, for example:

```
!<ar:filename 8439>!
```

Note that **ar51** has an option that searches for headers instead of using the size.

**archive** is the archive file. If ‘-’ is used as archive file name, then the original archive is read from standard input and the resulting archive file is written to standard output. This makes it possible to use **ar51** as a filter.

**files** are constituent modules in the archive file. For PC, the usage of wildcards (?,*) is allowed.

**posname** is required for the positioning options a b i and specifies the position in the archive where modules are inserted.
Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Append new modules after <em>posname</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>Insert new modules before <em>posname</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>Normally <em>ar51</em> creates <em>archive</em> when it needs to. The create option suppresses the warning message that is produced when <em>archive</em> is created. The c option can only be used with the r command and ‘-’ as <em>archive</em> file name to suppress reading from standard input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>Delete the named modules from the archive file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>Identical to option b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>Local. This option causes <em>ar51</em> to place the temporary files in the current directory for PC; in the directory /tmp for UNIX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Move the named modules to the end of the archive, or to another position as specified by one of the positioning options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>Print the named modules in the archive on standard output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>Quickly append the named modules to the end of the archive file. Positioning options are invalid. The command does not check whether the added members are already in the archive. Useful only to avoid very long waiting times when creating a large archive piece-by-piece.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>Replace the named modules in the archive file. If no names are given, only those modules are replaced for which a file with the same name is found in the current directory. New modules are placed at the end unless another position is specified by one of the positioning options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>Scan for the end of a module; do not use the size in the module header. The end of a module is found if end-of-file is detected or if a new module header is reached. Note that this may give false results if the modules happen to contain lines resembling module headers. Normally this letter is used as an option, but if no command character is present it behaves as a command: the archive is rewritten with correct module sizes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Print a table of contents of the archive file. If no names are given, all modules in the archive are printed. If names are given, only those modules are tabled.

Verbose. Under the verbose option, ar51 gives a module-by-module description of the making of a new archive file from the old archive and the constituent modules. When used with t, it gives not only the names but also the sizes of modules. When used with p, it precedes each module with a name.

Extract the named modules. If no names are given, all modules in the archive are extracted. In neither case does x alter the archive file.

Use this option for very long command lines. The file is used as an argument string. Each line in the file is treated as a separate argument for ar51.

Display version information at stderr.

Display an explanation of options at stdout.

If the same module is mentioned twice in an argument list, it may be put in the archive twice.
10.3 OBJECT REPORT WRITER: DMP51

Name

dmp51 report the contents of an object file

Syntax

dmp51 [options] [file ...]
dmp51 –V

dmp51 –? (UNIX C-shell: ”-?” or -?)

Description

dmp51 gives a complete report of all files in the argument list which have been created by the TASKING assembler or linker. If no file is given, the file a.out is displayed.

Options

Options start with a dash ‘-‘. Options can be combined after one dash. For example –vh is the same as –v –h.

- h Display the header record of the input file.
- s Display the section records of the input file.
- c Display the code bytes of each section.
- r Display the relocation records of the input file.
- n Display the symbol table records of the input file.
- a Display the string area of the input file.
- e Display the extension records of the input file.
- v Verbose mode. Display also section names when a reference to a section number is made. Type information is also decoded into symbolic names as mentioned in out.h and sd_class.h.
- V Display version information at stderr.
- ? Display an explanation of options at stdout.

All options except the –v, –V and –? options are on by default. The use of any option except the –v option turns off all other options.
Files

out.h
sd_class.h
10.4 FLASH UTILITIES

Name

flashsilabs51 Flash tool for the Silicon Laboratories 8051 family (using Cygnal JTAG wiggler).
flashphytec Flash tool for the Phytec 8051 target boards.
flashwinbond Flash tool for the Winbond 8051 target boards.

Syntax

flashsilabs51 [option]... [file]...
flashphytec [option]... [file]...
flashwinbond [option]... [file]...

Description

With the flash utilities you can load an IEEE-695, OMF51, Intel Hex or Motorola S-record file in a flash device. If you invoke the flash utility with the -nodialog command line option the absolute file is directly flashed into the target.

You can configure all flash settings from EDE via the Flasher entry of the Project | Project Options dialog. You can then start flashing with one click on the Flash IEEE-695, Intel Hex, Motorola S-Rec or OMF51 file button located in the toolbar.

You can perform several actions with the flash tools:

Full erase
Select this to erase the entire flash memory.

Program
Select this to program the flash device with the specified file.

Verify
Select this to compare the absolute file with the content of the FLASH.
Options

- **-actions=**\{F | P | V\}  
  Specify flash actions to perform in the order given:  
  F – Erase all blocks  
  P – Program file  
  V – Verify programmed blocks

- **-baudrate=**baudrate  
  Specify the baud rate to use: 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400 or 57600 (default depends on the flasher).

- **-com\{1 | 2 | 3 | 4\}**  
  Specify the serial port to use (Windows only).

- **-tty=**device  
  Specify the device to use (UNIX only).

- **-dir** directory  
  Set working directory.

- **-err** file  
  Append errors to file.

- **-f** file  
  Read options from file.

- **-go**  
  Start the application directly after flashing. (only for flashsilabs51)

- **-h**  
  Display a short explanation of options.

- **-level=**number  
  Log level (0=none until 3=all).

- **-nodialog**  
  Do not use the Flash dialog.

Example

To flash and verify the file **demo.sre** in a Silicon Laboratories device connected at serial port COM2, using a command line interface, type:

  flashsilabs51 -actions=PV -com2 -nodialog demo.sre

To erase the flash device and flash the file **demo.sre** at a baud rate of 19200 in a Phytec device connected at serial port COM2, using a command line interface, type:

  flashphytec -actions=FP -baudrate=19200 -com2 -nodialog demo.sre
10.5 FORMATTER: IEEE51

Name

ieee51 format a.out absolute object code to standard IEEE-695 object module format

Syntax

\[
\text{ieee51} \quad [-\text{startaddr}] \quad [-c] \quad \text{inputfile} \quad \text{outputfile} \\
\text{ieee51} \quad -V \\
\text{ieee51} \quad -? \quad (\text{UNIX C-shell: "}-?\" \text{or} \quad -\?\")
\]

Description

The program ieee51 formats a TASKING a.out file to IEEE-695 Object Module Format, as required by a debugger. The \text{inputfile} must be a TASKING a.out load file, which is already linked.

The section information and data part are formatted to IEEE format. If the a.out file contains high level language debug information, it is also formatted to IEEE debug records.

It is recommended to use \$\text{debuginfo}(371o) of \text{asm51}, to control the amount of generated debug information. With this option the assembler exports everything but compiler generated labels and assembler local symbols.

Options

-? Display an explanation of options at stdout.

-V Display version information at stderr.

-c No distinction between parameters and automatics and no stack adjustments. This option makes the output strict IEEE-695.

-\text{-startaddr} Define the (hex) execution start address of the IEEE file. If you omit this option, the default execution start address is 0.
**10.6 FORMATTER: IHEX51**

**Name**

ihex51  format object code into Intel hex format

**Syntax**

ihex51 [-lcount] [-z] [-sectlist] [-i8] [-i16] [-caddress,[address]]
-aaaddress,[address]] [-poffset [-ebex]] [-w] [infile]
[[-o] outfile]

ihex51 -V
ihex51 -? (UNIX C-shell: ”-?” or “\？”)

**Description**

ihex51 formats object files and executable files to Intel hex format records for (E)PROM programmers. Hexadecimal numbers A to F are always generated as capitals.

Empty sections in the input file are skipped. No empty records are generated for empty sections.

The program can format records to Intel hex8 format (for addresses less then 0xFFFF) and Intel hex16 format. When a section jumps over a 64k limit the program switches to hex16 records automatically. It is the programmers responsibility that sections do not intersect with each other.

Addresses that lie between sections are not filled in.

The output does not contain symbol information.

There is no need to place the input and output file names at the end of the command line. If data is to be read from standard input and the output is not standard output, the output file must be specified with the -o option.

If only one filename is given, it is assumed that it is the name of the input file hence output is written to standard output. It is also possible to omit both the input filename and output filename. In that case standard input and standard output are used.
Options

Options must be separated by a blank and start with a minus sign (-). Decimal and hexadecimal arguments should be concatenated directly to the option letter.

Options may be specified in any order.

Output filenames should be separated from the -o option letter by a blank.

Example:

ihex51 myfile.out -l20 -z -i16 outfile.hex

The next example gives the same result:

ihex51 -l20 -z -i16 -o outfile.hex < myfile.out

-i8 Output of Intel hex8 records for addresses up to 0xFFFF. This is the default record format.

-i16 Output of Intel hex16 records, i.e. extended address records with a segment base address are generated for every section. This format is also used when a 64k boundary is crossed.

-lcount Number of data bytes in the Intel hex format record. The number of characters in a line is given by count * 2 + 11. The default count is 32.

-z Do not output records with zeros (0x00) only.

-sectlist sectlist is a list of section numbers that must be written to output. The section numbers must be separated by commas. Note: section numbers start at 0 and can be found with the dmp51 utility.

-poffset offset is the offset in a section at which the output must start. If no section number is specified with the -s option, then bytes are skipped in the first record found. The user should be aware of the fact that there is no detection of skipping an entire section in a file. The -p option may not occur more than once in a command line. Warning: sections are adjacent in the input file, but do not have to be contiguous in memory!
-ehex  \( h \)ex is the length of the data output (must be used in combination with -p option). The user must have a clear view of the sizes and base addresses of the sections when he uses the -p and -e options.

Example:

```
ihex51 -s2 -p0 -eFF myfil.out
```

outputs the first 255 bytes of the third section of the file myfil.out to the standard output.

-aa\[\text{address}\]  
If only one address is given the specified address is added to the address of any data record.

If both addresses are given then the first address is the segment address offset and the second address is the instruction pointer offset (e.g. -a1000,0). Note that if you specify two hexadecimal numbers the program understands that you want to use the Intel hex16 format.

-cao\[\text{address}\]  
This option specifies the start address which is loaded into the processor. The start address is placed in the 'end-of-file' record. See the -a option for further details about the format.

-o outfile  \( o \)utfile is the name of the file to which output is written. This option must be used if the input is standard input and the output must be written in a file.

-w  Select word address count instead of byte address count.

-V  Display version information at stderr.

-?  Display an explanation of options at stdout.
10.7 FORMATTER: OMF51

Name

`omf51` translate `a.out` formatted files to absolute OMF51 format.

Syntax

```
omf51 [-r] ifile ofile
omf51 -V
omf51 -? ( UNIX C-shell: "-?" or \?)
```

Description

`omf51` formats `a.out` formatted files to files in the absolute OMF51–file format of Intel. The program can format the code part as well as the symbolic debug part. If the program is invoked in its most simple form:

```
omf51 a.out a.int
```

code and symbolic debug information will be formatted. The `-r` option can be used to format the code part only.

Options

- `-r` Format the code part only.
- `-V` Display version information at stderr.
- `-?` Display an explanation of options at stdout.

Diagnostics

Warnings:

Illegal memory type for section # `number`
Sections and segments have a memory type. If the formatter finds a type number outside the valid range, this warning is generated.

Section type mismatch for section # `number`
The symbol type conflicts with the memory type of the section it belongs to.

Error messages:

Cannot open `ifile` for input
The input file is not present or cannot be opened for reading.
Cannot open *ofile for output
   The output filename is illegal or the file may not be written in the directory specified.

Input is not an *a.out*–file
   The input file is in the wrong format. Only files produced by the linker can be formatted.

Unexpected end of file on input
   The input file is corrupted or cannot be read successfully.

Memory allocation failed (range records)
   A request for dynamic memory failed. This occurred while reading the range records of the *a.out* file.

Memory allocation failed (symbol record buffers)
   A request for dynamic memory failed. This occurred while reading the symbol records of the *a.out* file.

Language not equal to PL/M-51
   Conversion of high language debug information can only be done for PL/M-51 generated files.

Nesting of procedures too deep
   The conversion program uses a stack to maintain the declaration sequence of procedure names in the PL/M-51 program. If this program contains a deeply nested declarations, the stack overflows. The maximum stack depth is 32.

Syntax error
   *omf51* expects the symbolic debug records in a predefined sequence. If symbolic debug records appear in an unexpected order this error message is displayed.

**Internal errors:**

seek error
   A search request to an offset in the input file failed.

error in start position
   The start position of the code part in the input file is outside the valid range.

inconsistent range of records
   The size of a code range conflicts with the size of the segment it belongs to.
Write error (symbol records, type: num)

An attempt to write a symbol record in the OMF51-file failed.
10.8 FORMATTER: SREC51

Name
srec51 format object code into Motorola S format

Syntax
[[-o] outfile]

srec51 -V
srec51 -? (UNIX C-shell: ”-?” or “-\?”)

Description
srec51 formats object files and executable files to Motorola S format 
records. Hexadecimal numbers A to F are always generated as capitals.

Empty sections in the input file are skipped. No empty records are 
generated for empty sections.

The program can format records to Motorola S1 S2 and S3 format.

Addresses that lie between sections are not filled in.

The output does not contain symbol information.

There is no need to place the input and output file names at the end of 
the command line. If data is to be read from standard input and the output 
is not standard output, the output file must be specified with the -o 
option.

If only one filename is given, it is assumed that it is the name of the input 
file, hence output is written to standard output.

It is also possible to omit both the input filename and output filename. In 
that case standard input and standard output are used.

Options
Options must be separated by a blank and start with a minus sign (-). 
Decimal and hexadecimal arguments should be concatenated directly to 
the option letter.

Options may be specified in any order.
Output filenames should be separated from the -o option letter by a blank.

Example:

```
srec51 myfile.out -l20 -z outfile.hex
```

The next example gives the same result:

```
srec51 -l20 -z -o outfile.hex < myfile.out
```

- **-r1**  Output of Motorola S1 data records, for 16 bits addresses. This is the default record type.
- **-r2**  Output of Motorola S2 records, for 24 bits addresses.
- **-r3**  Output of Motorola S3 records, for 32 bits addresses.
- **-lcount**  Number of character pairs in the output record. The number of characters in a line is given by count * 2 + 4. The default count is 32.
- **-z**  Do not output records with zeros (0x00) only.
- **-sectlist**  sectlist is a list of section numbers that must be written to output. The section numbers must be separated by commas. Note: section numbers start at 0 and can be found with the dmp51 utility.
- **-poffset**  offset is the offset in a section at which the output must start. If no section number is specified with the -s option, then bytes are skipped in the first record found. The user should be aware of the fact that there is no detection of skipping an entire section in a file. The -p option may not occur more than once in a command line. Warning: sections are adjacent in the input file, but do not have to be contiguous in memory!
- **-ehex**  hex is the length of the data output (must be used in combination with -p option). The user must have a clear view of the sizes and base addresses of the sections when he uses the -p and -e options. Example:

```
srec51 -p10 -eD0 myfil.out -r2
```
skips 16 bytes in the first section and output the following 208 bytes of the file myfil.out in S2 format records to the standard output.

-\texttt{a} \texttt{address}  \texttt{address} specifies the address that is to be added to the address of any data record.

-\texttt{c} \texttt{address}  This option specifies the start address which is loaded into the processor. The start address is placed in the termination record.

-\texttt{n}  Suppress header (S0), and termination records (S7, S8 or S9).

-\texttt{nh}  No output of header record.

-\texttt{nt}  No output of termination record.

-\texttt{o} \texttt{outfile}  \texttt{outfile} is the name of the file to which output is written. This option must be used if the input is standard input and the output must be written in a file.

-\texttt{w}  Select word address count instead of byte address count.

-\texttt{V}  Display version information at stderr.

-\texttt{?}  Display an explanation of options at stdout.
10.9 MAKE UTILITY: MK51

Name
mk51 maintain, update, and reconstruct groups of programs

Syntax

\texttt{mk51 [option ...] [target ...] [macro=value ...]}

\texttt{mk51 -V}

\texttt{mk51 -?} (UNIX C-shell: ”-?” or \texttt{-\?
)}

Description

\texttt{mk51} takes a file of dependencies (a 'makefile') and decides what commands have to be executed to bring the files up–to–date. These commands are either executed directly from \texttt{mk51} or written to the standard output without executing them.

If no target is specified on the command line, \texttt{mk51} uses the first target defined in the first makefile.

Long filenames are supported when they are surrounded by double quotes (”). It is also allowed to use spaces in directory names and file names.

Options

\texttt{-?} Show invocation syntax.

\texttt{-D} Display the text of the makefiles as read in.

\texttt{-DD} Display the text of the makefiles and 'mk51.mk'.

\texttt{-G dirname} Change to the directory specified with \texttt{dirname} before reading a makefile. This makes it possible to build an application in another directory than the current working directory.

\texttt{-K} Do not remove temporary files.

\texttt{-S} Undo the effect of the \texttt{-k} option. Stop processing when a non–zero exit status is returned by a command.

\texttt{-V} Display version information at stderr.

\texttt{-W target} Execute as if this target has a modification time of ”right now”. This is the ”What If” option.
-a Always rebuild the target without checking whether it is out of date.

-c Run as child process.

-d Display the reasons why mk51 chooses to rebuild a target. All dependencies which are newer are displayed.

-dd Display the dependency checks in more detail. Dependencies which are older are displayed as well as newer.

-e Let environment variables override macro definitions from makefiles. Normally, makefile macros override environment variables. Command line macro definitions always override both environment variables and makefile macros definitions.

-err file Redirect all error output to the specified file.

-f file Use the specified file instead of 'makefile'. A ‘-’ as the makefile argument denotes the standard input.

-i Ignore error codes returned by commands. This is equivalent to the special target .IGNORE:.

-k When a nonzero error status is returned by a command, abandon work on the current target, but continue with other branches that do not depend on this target.

-m file Read command line information from file. If file is a ‘-’, the information is read from standard input.

-n Perform a dry run. Print commands, but do not execute them. Even lines beginning with an @ are printed. However, if a command line is an invocation of mk51, that line is always executed.

-p Normally, if a command in a target rule in a makefile returns an error or when the target construction is interrupted, the make utility removes that target file. With this option you tell the make utility to make all target files precious. This means that all dependency files are never removed.

-q Question mode. mk51 returns a zero or non-zero status code, depending on whether or not the target file is up to date.
-r  Do not read in the default file 'mk51.mk'.

-s  Silent mode. Do not print command lines before executing them. This is equivalent to the special target .SILENT:.

-t  Touch the target files, bringing them up to date, rather than performing the rules to reconstruct them.

-time  Display current date and time.

-w  Redirect warnings and errors to standard output. Without, 
    \texttt{mk51} and the commands it executes use standard error for this purpose.

\texttt{macro=value}

Macro definition. This definition remains fixed for the \texttt{mk51}
invocation. It overrides any regular definitions for the specified macro within the makefiles and from the environment. It is inherited by subordinate \texttt{mk51}'s but act as an environment variable for these. That is, depending on the \texttt{-e} setting, it may be overridden by a makefile definition.

Usage

Makefiles

The first makefile read is 'mk51.mk', which is looked for at the following places (in this order):

-  in the current working directory
-  in the directory pointed to by the \texttt{HOME} environment variable
-  in the \texttt{etc} directory relative to the directory where \texttt{mk51} is located

Example (PC):

when \texttt{mk51} is installed in \texttt{\CC51\BIN} the directory \texttt{\CC51\ETC} is searched for makefiles.

Example (UNIX):

when \texttt{mk51} is installed in \texttt{/usr/local/cc51/bin} the directory \texttt{/usr/local/cc51/etc} is searched for makefiles.

It typically contains predefined macros and implicit rules.
The default name of the makefile is 'makefile' in the current directory. If this file is not found on a UNIX system, the file 'Makefile' is then used as the default. Alternate makefiles can be specified using one or more `-f` options on the command line. Multiple `-f` options act as if all the makefiles were concatenated in a left-to-right order.

The makefile(s) may contain a mixture of comment lines, macro definitions, include lines, and target lines. Lines may be continued across input lines by escaping the NEWLINE with a backslash (\). If a line must end with a backslash then an empty macro should be appended. Anything after a "#" is considered to be a comment, and is stripped from the line, including spaces immediately before the "#". If the "#" is inside a quoted string, it is not treated as a comment. Completely blank lines are ignored.

An `include` line is used to include the text of another makefile. It consists of the word "include" left justified, followed by spaces, and followed by the name of the file that is to be included at this line. Macros in the name of the included file are expanded before the file is included. Include files may be nested.

An `export` line is used for exporting a macro definition to the environment of any command executed by `mk51`. Such a line starts with the word "export", followed by one or more spaces and the name of the macro to be exported. Macros are exported at the moment an export line is read. This implies that references to forward macro definitions are equivalent to undefined macros.

**Conditional Processing**

Lines containing `ifdef`, `ifndef`, `else` or `endif` are used for conditional processing of the makefile. They are used in the following way:

```
ifdef macroname
  if-lines
else
  else-lines
endif
```

The `if-lines` and `else-lines` may contain any number of lines or text of any kind, even other `ifdef`, `ifndef`, `else` and `endif` lines, or no lines at all. The `else` line may be omitted, along with the `else-lines` following it.
First the *macroname* after the *if* command is checked for definition. If the macro is defined then the *if-lines* are interpreted and the *else-lines* are discarded (if present). Otherwise the *if-lines* are discarded; and if there is an *else* line, the *else-lines* are interpreted; but if there is no *else* line, then no lines are interpreted.

When using the *ifndef* line instead of *ifdef*, the macro is tested for not being defined. These conditional lines can be nested up to 6 levels deep.

**Macros**

Macros have the form ‘WORD = text and more text’. The WORD need not be uppercase, but this is an accepted standard. Spaces around the equal sign are not significant. Later lines which contain $(WORD) or ${WORD} will have this replaced by ‘text and more text’. If the macro name is a single character, the parentheses are optional. Note that the expansion is done recursively, so the body of a macro may contain other macro invocations. The right side of a macro definition is expanded when the macro is actually used, not at the point of definition.

Example:

```
FOOD = $(EAT) and $(DRINK)
EAT = meat and/or vegetables
DRINK = water
export FOOD
```

‘$(FOOD)’ becomes ‘meat and/or vegetables and water’ and the environment variable FOOD is set accordingly by the export line. However, when a macro definition contains a direct reference to the macro being defined then those instances are expanded at the point of definition. This is the only case when the right side of a macro definition is (partially) expanded. For example, the line

```
DRINK = $(DRINK) or beer
```

after the export line affects ‘$(FOOD)’ just as the line

```
DRINK = water or beer
```

would do. However, the environment variable FOOD will only be updated when it is exported again.

You are advised not to use the double quotes (”) for long filename support in macros, otherwise this might result in a concatenation of two macros with double quotes (”) in between.
Special Macros

MAKE  This normally has the value \texttt{mk51}. Any line which invokes MAKE temporarily overrides the \texttt{-n} option, just for the duration of the one line. This allows nested invocations of MAKE to be tested with the \texttt{-n} option.

MAKEFLAGS  This macro has the set of options provided to \texttt{mk51} as its value. If this is set as an environment variable, the set of options is processed before any command line options. This macro may be explicitly passed to nested \texttt{mk51}'s, but it is also available to these invocations as an environment variable. The \texttt{-f} and \texttt{-d} flags are not recorded in this macro.

PRODDIR  This macro expands the name of the directory where \texttt{mk51} is installed without the last path component. The resulting directory name will be the root directory of the installed 8051 package, unless \texttt{mk51} is installed somewhere else. This macro can be used to refer to files belonging to the product, for example a library source file.

Example:

\begin{verbatim}
DOPRINT = $(PRODDIR)/lib/src/_doprint.c
\end{verbatim}

When \texttt{mk51} is installed in the directory \texttt{/cc51/bin} this line expands to:

\begin{verbatim}
fDOPRINT = /cc51/lib/src/_doprint.c
\end{verbatim}

SHELLCMD  This contains the default list of commands which are local to the SHELL. If a rule is an invocation of one of these commands, a SHELL is automatically spawned to handle it.

$  This macro translates to a dollar sign. Thus you can use "$$" in the makefile to represent a single "$".

There are several dynamically maintained macros that are useful as abbreviations within rules. It is best not to define them explicitly.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{$*}  \hspace{1cm} The basename of the current target.
  \item \texttt{$<}  \hspace{1cm} The name of the current dependency file.
  \item \texttt{$@}  \hspace{1cm} The name of the current target.
\end{itemize}
Utilities

••••••••

$? The names of dependents which are younger than the target.

$! The names of all dependents.

The $< and $* macros are normally used for implicit rules. They may be unreliable when used within explicit target command lines. All macros may be suffixed with F to specify the Filename components (e.g. ${*F}, ${(@F)}. Likewise, the macros $*, $< and $@ may be suffixed by D to specify the directory component.

The result of the $* macro is always without double quotes ("), regardless of the original target having double quotes (") around it or not. The result of using the suffix F (Filename component) or D (Directory component) is also always without double quotes ("), regardless of the original contents having double quotes (") around it or not.

Functions

A function not only expands but also performs a certain operation. Functions syntactically look like macros but have embedded spaces in the macro name, e.g. $(match arg1 arg2 arg3 )'. All functions are built-in and currently there are five of them: match, separate, protect, exist and nexist.

The match function yields all arguments which match a certain suffix:

$(match .obj prog.obj sub.obj mylib.a)

will yield

prog.obj sub.obj

The separate function concatenates its arguments using the first argument as the separator. If the first argument is enclosed in double quotes then \n' is interpreted as a newline character, \t' is interpreted as a tab, \000' is interpreted as an octal value (where, 000 is one to three octal digits), and spaces are taken literally. For example:

$(separate \"\n" prog.obj sub.obj)

will result in

prog.obj
sub.obj

Function arguments may be macros or functions themselves. So,
$(separate "\n" $(match .obj $!))

will yield all object files the current target depends on, separated by a newline string.

The protect function adds one level of quoting. This function has one argument which can contain white space. If the argument contains any white space, single quotes, double quotes, or backslashes, it is enclosed in double quotes. In addition, any double quote or backslash is escaped with a backslash.

Example:

    echo $(protect I’ll show you the ”protect” function)

will yield

    echo ”I’ll show you the ”protect” function”

The exist function expands to its second argument if the first argument is an existing file or directory.

Example:

    $(exist test.c ccxa test.c)

When the file test.c exists it will yield:

    cc51 test.c

When the file test.c does not exist nothing is expanded.

The nexist function is the opposite of the exist function. It expands to its second argument if the first argument is not an existing file or directory.

Example:

    $(nexist test.src cc51 test.c)

Targets

A target entry in the makefile has the following format:

    target ... : [dependency ...] [ ; rule]
    [rule]
    ...


Any line which does not have leading white space (other than macro definitions) is a 'target' line. Target lines consist of one or more filenames (or macros which expand into same) called targets, followed by a colon (:). The ':' is followed by a list of dependent files. The dependency list may be terminated with a semicolon (;) which may be followed by a rule or shell command.

Special allowance is made on PC for the colons which are needed to specify files on other drives, so for example, the following will work as intended:

    c:foo.obj : a:foo.c

If a target is named in more than one target line, the dependencies are added to form the target’s complete dependency list.

The dependents are the ones from which a target is constructed. They in turn may be targets of other dependents. In general, for a particular target file, each of its dependent files is 'made', to make sure that each is up to date with respect to it's dependents.

The modification time of the target is compared to the modification times of each dependent file. If the target is older, one or more of the dependents have changed, so the target must be constructed. Of course, this checking is done recursively, so that all dependents of dependents of dependents of ... are up-to-date.

To reconstruct a target, mk51 expands macros and functions, strips off initial white space, and either executes the rules directly, or passes each to a shell or COMMAND.COM for execution.

For target lines, macros and functions are expanded on input. All other lines have expansion delayed until absolutely required (i.e. macros and functions in rules are dynamic).

**Special Targets**

`.DEFAULT:

The rule for this target is used to process a target when there is no other entry for it, and no implicit rule for building it. mk51 ignores all dependencies for this target.

`.DONE:

This target and its dependencies are processed after all other targets are built.
.IGNORE: Non-zero error codes returned from commands are ignored. Encountering this in a makefile is the same as specifying \-i on the command line.

.INIT: This target and its dependencies are processed before any other targets are processed.

.SILENT: Commands are not echoed before executing them. Encountering this in a makefile is the same as specifying \-s on the command line.

.SUFFIXES:
The suffixes list for selecting implicit rules. Specifying this target with dependents adds these to the end of the suffixes list. Specifying it with no dependents clears the list.

.PRECIOUS:
Dependency files mentioned for this target are not removed. Normally, if a command in a rule returns an error or when the target construction is interrupted, \texttt{mk51} removes that target file. You can use the \texttt{-p} command line option to make all target files precious.

\textbf{Rules}

A line in a makefile that starts with a TAB or SPACE is a shell line or rule. This line is associated with the most recently preceding dependency line. A sequence of these may be associated with a single dependency line. When a target is out of date with respect to a dependent, the sequence of commands is executed. Shell lines may have any combination of the following characters to the left of the command:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{@} will not echo the command line, except if \texttt{-n} is used.
  \item \texttt{mk51} will ignore the exit code of the command, i.e. the ERRORLEVEL of MS--DOS. Without this, \texttt{mk51} terminates when a non--zero exit code is returned.
  \item \texttt{+} \texttt{mk51} will use a shell or COMMAND.COM to execute the command.
\end{itemize}

If the '+' is not attached to a shell line, but the command is a DOS command or if redirection is used (<, |, >), the shell line is passed to COMMAND.COM anyway. For Unix, redirection, backquote ('') parentheses and variables force the use of a shell.
You can force \texttt{mk51} to execute multiple command lines in one shell environment. This is accomplished with the token combination ";\backslash".

Example:

\begin{verbatim}
  cd c:\cc51\bin ;\backslash
  cc51 -V
\end{verbatim}

The ";" must always directly be followed by the "\" token. Whitespace is not removed when it is at the end of the previous command line or when it is in front of the next command line. The use of the ";" as an operator for a command (like a semicolon ';'; separated list with each item on one line) and the "\" as a layout tool is not supported, unless they are separated with whitespace.

\texttt{mk51} can generate inline temporary files. If a line contains '<<\texttt{WORD}' then all subsequent lines up to a line starting with \texttt{WORD}, are placed in a temporary file. Next, '<<\texttt{WORD}' is replaced with the name of the temporary file.

No whitespace is allowed between '<<' and 'WORD'.

Example:

\begin{verbatim}
  link51 @<<EOF
  $(separate ",\n" $(match .obj $!)),
  $(separate ",\n" $(match .lib $!))
  to @
  $(LDFLAGS)
EOF
\end{verbatim}

The four lines between the tags (EOF) are written to a temporary file (e.g. "\tmp\mk2"), and the command line is rewritten as "link51 @\tmp\mk2".

\textit{Implicit Rules}

Implicit rules are intimately tied to the .SUFFIXES: special target. Each entry in the .SUFFIXES: list defines an extension to a filename which may be used to build another file. The implicit rules then define how to actually build one file from another. These files are related, in that they must share a common basename, but have different extensions.
If a file that is being made does not have an explicit target line, an implicit rule is looked for. Each entry in the .SUFFIXES: list is combined with the extension of the target, to get the name of an implicit target. If this target exists, it gives the rules used to transform a file with the dependent extension to the target file. Any dependents of the implicit target are ignored.

If a file that is being made has an explicit target, but no rules, a similar search is made for implicit rules. Each entry in the .SUFFIXES: list is combined with the extension of the target, to get the name of an implicit target. If such a target exists, then the list of dependents is searched for a file with the correct extension, and the implicit rules are invoked to create the target.

Examples

This makefile says that prog.out depends on two files prog.obj and sub.obj, and that they in turn depend on their corresponding source files (prog.c and sub.c) along with the common file inc.h.

CSTART  = $(PRODDIR)\lib\cstart.obj
LIB     = $(PRODDIR)\lib\c51s.lib
CC51INC = $(PRODDIR)\include
export CC51INC
PATH    = $(PRODDIR)\bin;$(PATH)
export PATH

prog.out: prog.obj sub.obj
        link51 $(CSTART),prog.obj,sub.obj,$(LIB) to prog.out

prog.obj: prog.c inc.h
          cc51 prog.c
          asm51 prog.src NOPRINT

sub.obj: sub.c inc.h
          cc51 sub.c
          asm51 sub.src NOPRINT

The following makefile uses implicit rules (from mk51.mk) to perform the same job. It is assumed that the environment variables LIBDIR, CC51INC and PATH are set:

prog.out: $(LIBDIR)\cstart.obj prog.obj sub.obj $(LIBDIR)\c51s.lib
prog.obj: prog.c inc.h
sub.obj: sub.c inc.h
Files

  makefile  Description of dependencies and rules.
  Makefile  Alternative to makefile, for Unix.
  mk51.mk  Default dependencies and rules.

Diagnostics

  mk51  returns an exit status of 1 when it halts as a result of an error. Otherwise it returns an exit status of 0.
A.OUT FILE FORMAT

APPENDIX A

TASKING

A.OUT FILE FORMAT
1 INTRODUCTION

The layout of the assembler/linker output file is machine independent (through being fully byte oriented), compact and accepts variable–length symbols. All \texttt{chars} are 1 byte, \texttt{shorts} are 2 bytes and \texttt{longs} are 4 bytes.

The elements of an \texttt{a.out} file describe the sections in the file and the symbol debug information. These elements include:

- File Header record
- Section Header records
- Raw data for each section with initialized data
- Relocation records
- Name records
- Identifier strings
- Extension Header record
- Extension records:
  - Segment Range records
  - Allocation records

The linker produces absolute object files. These files do not contain relocation records. The following figure illustrates the layout of an \texttt{a.out} file:

```
File Header

Section Header 1
  
  Section Header n

Section 1 Data
  
  Section n Data

Relocation Records

Name Records

Identifier Strings
```
1.1 FILE HEADER

Linking large applications the maximum number of sections in an a.out file (62) is easily reached. There is a new version of a.out, version 2, that supports a larger maximum section count. This is 256. Due to this change the layout of the header for version 1 and version 2 is slightly different. The two figures at the end of this section show the difference.

The file header occupies the first 20 bytes (version 1) or 22 bytes (version 2) of the file and comprises:

**oh_magic** An unsigned short containing the 'magic' number specifying the type of file (assembler/linker output file).

- 0x201 specifies a TCP loadfile.
- 0x202 specifies a TCP object file.
- 0x401 specifies a loadfile from the Intel compatible linker.
- 0x402 specifies an object file from the Intel compatible assembler.

**oh_stamp** An unsigned short containing the version stamp (the assembler/linker release version). The upper 8 bits of the stamp field contain a code specifying the target processor.

**oh_flags** An unsigned short specifying the following format flags:

- **HF_BREV** If bit 0 of oh_flags is '1' then the high order byte of an adjacent pair of bytes is contained in the lower address; otherwise it is in the higher address.

- **HF_WREV** If bit 1 of oh_flags is '1' then the high order word of an adjacent pair of words is contained in the lower address; otherwise it is in the higher address.
HF_LINK If bit 2 of oh_flags is '1' then one or more references remain unresolved; otherwise all references have been resolved.

HF_8086 If bit 3 of oh_flags is '1' then os_base has been specially encoded for an 8086 machine.

oh_nsect Version 1:
A char containing the number of output section fillers.

Version 2:
An unsigned short containing the number of output section fillers.

oh_nsegm Version 1:
A char containing the number of segments used.

Version 2:
An unsigned short containing the number of segments used.

oh_nrelo An unsigned short containing the number of relocation records.

oh_nname An unsigned short containing the number of name records (also called 'symbol records').

oh_nemit A long containing the sum of the sizes of all sections in the file.

oh_nchar A long containing the size of the symbol string area

file header layout (Version 1):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>byte number</th>
<th>type</th>
<th>description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-1</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_magic: magic number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_stamp: version stamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_flags: flag field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>oh_nsect: number of sections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>oh_nsegm: number of segments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_nrelo: number of relocation records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_nname: number of name records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-15</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>oh_nemit: number of bytes initialized data in the file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-19</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>oh_nchar: size of string area</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
file header layout (Version 2):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>byte number</th>
<th>type</th>
<th>description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-1</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_magic: magic number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_stamp: version stamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_flags: flag field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_nsect: number of sections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_nrelo: number of relocation records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_nname: number of name records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-15</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>oh_nemit: number of bytes initialized data in the file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-19</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>oh_nchar: size of string area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-21</td>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>oh_nsegm: number of segments</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 SECTION HEADERS

The section header records comprise a separate header for each output section; each section header record occupies 20 bytes and comprises the following:

- **os_base**: A `long` containing the start address of the section in the machine.
- **os_size**: A `long` containing the size of the section in the machine.
- **os_foff**: A `long` containing the start address of the section in the file.
- **os_flen**: A `long` containing the size of the section in the file.
- **os_lign**: A `long` containing the alignment of the section.

1.3 SECTION FILLERS

The section contents follow the section headers and comprise the contents of each output section, in the same order as the section headers. The contents start at the address specified by `os_base` and are of the length specified by `os_size`. The initialized portion of the section is of the length specified by `os_flen`. An uninitialized portion of the contents comprising `os_size - os_flen` bytes is left at the end of the contents. There are no restrictions on section boundaries so sections may overlap.
1.4 RELOCATION RECORDS

Relocation records comprise an 8-byte entry for each occurrence of a relocatable value; the entries have the following structure:

- **or_type**: A `char` containing the type of reference.
- **or_sect**: A `char` containing the number of the referencing section. If `or_sect` is zero, the relocation record is a symbol table relocation record rather than a code relocation record.
- **or_nami**: An `unsigned short` containing the referenced symbol index (the offset from the start of the symbol table).
- **or_addr**: A `long` containing the address where relocation is to take place. If the current relocation record is a symbol table relocation record, `or_addr` contains the index of the symbol to be relocated.

1.5 NAME RECORDS

The name records comprise a variable length entry for each symbol. Each entry consists of a record and an associated identifier; the record and the identifier are held separately to allow variable length identifiers. The records comprise the following:

- **on_u**: A `union` which can contain (at different times) either a `char` pointer (`on_ptr`) or a `long` (`on_off`). `on_ptr` is the symbol name when the file is loaded into memory for execution and `on_off` is the offset in the file to the first character of the identifier.

- **on_type**: An `unsigned short` which describes the symbol as follows:
  - **S_TYP**: This comprises the least significant 7 bits of `on_type` which have the following significance:
    - If all bits are '0' the symbol is undefined (S_UND).
    - If bit 0 is '1' and bits 1 to 6 are all '0' the symbol is absolute (S_ABS).
Otherwise it is relative. In version 1 of the a.out file format these bits specify the section number. In version 2 of the a.out file format a separate field is used (S_SEC). The number of bits are not enough to hold all possible section numbers.

S_PUB  If bit 6 of on_type is '1' the symbol is associated with a .comm pseudo.

S_EXT  If bit 7 of on_type is '1' the symbol is external; otherwise it is local.

S_ETC  Bits 8–15 are the type specification for the symbol table information. The include file sd_class.h contains a list of possible numbers and their meaning.

on_desc  An unsigned short containing the debug information.

on_valu  A long containing the symbol value.

on_sect  An unsigned short containing the number of the relocatable section the symbol belongs to (format version 2 only).

In order to permit several symbolic debug features, all symbol entries are in the order of their definition. The section symbols occupy the last entries in the symbol table for the purpose of quick reference.

1.6 EXTENSION RECORDS

The way the link information is passed from the assembler to the linker is through extension records at the end of the a.out file. Within the framework of these extension records we can describe all the extra information required.

The extension records only occur in object files. Extension records consist of:

- an extension header
- range specification records
- allocation specification records.
**Extension Header**

The extension header consists of 8 bytes and consist of:

- **eh_magic**  An unsigned short containing the 'magic' number specifying the type of file (assembler/linker output file).
  
  - **N_MAGIC** (0x202) specifies an object file

- **eh_stamp**  An unsigned short containing the version stamp (the assembler/linker release version)

- **eh_nsegm** An unsigned short containing the number of range specification records.

- **eh_allo**   An unsigned short containing the number of allocation records.

**Segment Range Specification Records**

The segment range allocation records specify the lower bound and upper bound of a particular memory range.

- **es_type**  An unsigned short containing segment type information.
  
  - **S_TYP**    In version 1 of the file format these bits contain the segment number. In version 2 these bits are meaningless.

  - **S_ETC**    Bits 8–15 are the type specification bits. Currently used values are:

    - **S_RNG** with a value of 0x7100: range record.

- **es_desc**  An unsigned short, currently not used, but it can be used for future debugging extensions.

- **es_lval**  A long containing the lower bound value of the memory range.

- **es_uval**  A long containing the upper bound value of the memory range.

- **es_sect**  An unsigned short containing the segment type information. (format version 2 only)
**Section Base and Paging Specification Records**

**ea_type**  
An **unsigned short** containing segment type information. Types are:

- **S_TYP**  
  In version 1 of the file format these bits contain the segment number. In version 2 these bits are meaningless.

- **S_ETC**  
  Bits 8–15 are the type specification bits. Currently used values are:
  - **S_BAS**  
    specifies the base value (0x7200)
  - **S_PAG**  
    specifies the page value (0x7300)
  - **S_INP**  
    specifies the inpage value (0x7400).
  - **S_SBAS**  
    specifies the SBASE value (0x7500). (8086, 80186)
  - **S_USE**  
    specifies the final “using” value (0x7600). (8051)

**ea_desc**  
An **unsigned short**, currently not used, but it can be used for future debugging extensions.

**ea_valu**  
A **long** containing the page size or the base address.

**ea_sect**  
An **unsigned short** containing the segment type information. (format version 2 only)
APPENDIX B

MACRO PREPROCESSOR ERROR MESSAGES

TASKING
1 INTRODUCTION

This appendix contains all warnings (W), errors (E), fatal errors (F) and informational messages (I) of the macro preprocessor mpp51.

2 WARNINGS (W)

W 201: undefined macro name: "name"
The text following a metacharacter (initial "%") is not a recognized use function or built-in function. The reference is ignored and processing continues with the character following the name. If you specified option --warn-on-undefined-macro this warning occurs instead of error E 301.

W 339: registersf include file will be included by the assembler, include can be removed
With the -C option of the.asm51 assembler you can specify a specific .sfr file to be included. You don’t need to include this file with the $INCLUDE statement.

3 ERRORS (E)

E 100: user error: message
This message is the result of the ERROR command. Macro preprocessing will continue after the ERROR command.

E 104: unexpected character 'wrong-char', expecting 'char'
Please check and correct the syntax of the command. This error occurs when parentheses or a comma are missing.

E 105: command expecting identifier
The specified command requires an identifier as argument.

E 106: syntax error in macro definition: expected '(' or LOCAL
The built-in function DEFINE needs a macro body and optionally a list with local symbols.

E 107: empty option
See the command line usage for a valid list of options.
E 108: syntax error in expression, unexpected token 'token'

See section .... for a list of valid expression operators.

E 109: empty expression

A numeric expression was required as a parameter to one of the built-in functions EVAL, IF, WHILE, REPEAT and SUBSTR or as a parameter to the predefined macro "SET".

E 110: invalid delimiter '%s', expected '%s'

A delimiter required by the scanning of a user-defined function was expected, but instead another token was found. The macro function call is aborted and scanning continues from the point at which the error was detected.

E 111: invalid macro delimiter 'char'

Typically, the macro delimiters are parentheses and commas.

E 112: syntax error in parameter list

Use parentheses and commas to separate the parameter list from the macro name.

E 113: expected parameter identifier

A delimiter was found in the parameter list, but it was not followed by a parameter. Remove the delimiter or add a parameter.

E 114: cannot redefine local label "name"

The local symbol can only be defined once.

E 115: literal-mode '*' not allowed

The literal character '*' is not accepted in connection with the comment function '%', escape function '%n', bracket function '%( ', and balanced text mode function '%{ }'.

E 116: unknown command 'command'

The text following a metacharacter (initial "%") is not recognized as a valid command or built-in function.

E 117: parameter 'name' already used

Every parameter name should be unique.
E 119: error writing to output (\texttt{char}): \textit{error-message}

The specified character could not be written. The \textit{error-message} explains why.

E 120: macro type \texttt{macro} not supported

The \texttt{%macro} must be a predefined macro command or a user macro.

E 301: undefined macro name: "\texttt{name}"

The text following a metacharacter (initial \texttt{"\%"}) is not a recognized use function or built-in function. The reference is ignored and processing continues with the character following the name.

E 302: illegal exit macro

The built-in macro \texttt{"EXIT"} is not valid in the context. The call is ignored. A call to \texttt{"EXIT"} must allow an exit through a user function, or the WHILE or REPEAT built-in functions.

E 304: illegal expression

A numeric expression was required as a parameter to one of the built-in functions \texttt{EVAL}, \texttt{IF}, \texttt{WHILE}, \texttt{REPEAT} and \texttt{SUBSTR} or as a parameter to the predefined macro \texttt{"SET"}. continues with the character following the illegal expression.

E 305: missing \texttt{"FI"} in \texttt{"IF"}

The \texttt{IF} built-in function did not have a \texttt{FI} terminator. The macro is processed but may not be interpreted as you intended.

E 306: missing \texttt{"THEN"} in \texttt{"FI"}

The \texttt{IF} built-in macro did not have a \texttt{THEN} clause following the conditional expression clause. The call to \texttt{IF} is aborted and processing continues at the point in the string at which the error was discovered.

E 307: illegal attempt to redefine macro \texttt{"name"}

It is illegal for a built-in function name or a parameter name to be redefined (with the \texttt{DEFINE} or \texttt{MATCH} built-in functions). Also, a user function cannot be redefined inside an expansion of itself.

E 308: missing identifier in define pattern

In a \texttt{DEFINE} macro an identifier is missing, e.g., an identifier type delimiter was expected after the occurrence of \texttt{"@"}. The \texttt{DEFINE} is aborted and scanning continues from the point at which the error was detected.
E 309: missing balanced string
A balanced string "(...)" in a call to a built-in function is not present. The macro function call is aborted and scanning continues from the point at which the error was detected.

E 311: missing delimiter
A delimiter required by the scanning of a user-defined function is not present. The macro function call is aborted and scanning continues from the point at which the error was detected.

E 318: illegal metacharacter: "char"
The METACHARACTER built-in function has specified a character that cannot legally be used as a metacharacter: a blank, letter, digit, left or right parenthesis, or asterisk. The current metacharacter remains unchanged.

E 319: unbalanced ")" in argument to user defined macro
During the scan of a user-defined macro, the parenthesis count went negative, indicating an unmatched right parenthesis. The macro function call is aborted and scanning continues from the point at which the error was detected.

E 323: cannot open include file: "file"
The given name of the include file does not exist or cannot be opened. Processing continues in the current source file.

E 324: include file: "file" nested too deeply
The maximum number of nested include files is 32. An INCLUDE call trying to nest the 33rd include file is just ignored. Processing continues in the current source file (i.e. 32nd nested include file).

E 338: illegal define/undine syntax at command line "-Darg" / "-Uarg"
Check the syntax for the \texttt{-D} option or the \texttt{-U} option.

4 FATAL ERRORS (F)

Fatal errors cause the macro preprocessor to exit immediately.

F 101: user fatal: message
This fatal error message is the result of the \texttt{%FATAL()} command.
F 102: missing argument for \texttt{-o} option
The option \texttt{-o} expects the name of an output file as argument.

F 103: option: \texttt{\-o\ filename\textquoteright}: output file already specified (\textit{filename})
Only one \texttt{-o} option is allowed.

F 118: expected '(' after \texttt{$\text{INCLUDE}$}
The \texttt{$\text{INCLUDE}/\$\text{IC}$} statement must be followed by \texttt{"(file)"}.

F 122: internal error, invalid unary type (\textit{type})
Use one of the unary operators \texttt{LOW, HIGH, +, -, NOT}.

F 123: internal error, invalid binary type (\textit{type})
Use one of the valid binary operators.

F 300: more errors detected, not reported
A maximum of 40 errors are reported.

F 312: premature eof
The end of the input file occurred while the call to the macro was being scanned. This usually occurs when a delimiter to a macro call is omitted, causing the macro preprocessor to scan to the end of the file searching for the missing delimiter.

F 332: cannot open source file: \texttt{"file"}
The input file specified on the command line does not exist or cannot be opened.

F 333: input and output file are identical
The input file is of the form *\texttt{.src} or an output file was specified identical to the input file.

F 334: illegal option: \texttt{"\textit{name}"}
The specified option does not exist. See the usage for a list of valid options.

F 335: cannot open output file: \texttt{"file"}
Check if you have enough free disk space and that you have write permissions.
F 337: out of memory

There is not enough memory to continue. Close some other running programs and try again or add more memory.

5 INFORMATIONAL MESSAGES (I)

By default informational messages can be shown. You can disable these messages by specifying the option --no-info-messages.

I 400: 'parameter' is a parameter for macro 'name' that is currently under definition

This message usually follows error 301 or warning 201. In its turn it is followed by message I 401.

I 401: probably literal mode '*' should have been used on 'macro-name': '%*define(...)'  

With the literal mode '*' character, macro calls contained in the body of the macro are not expanded until the macro is called.

I 402: macro 'name' expanded within %ifdef / %ifndef  

You probably used a '%' character before the macro name.

I 403: probably '%ifdef(name)' / '%ifndef(name)' should be used instead  

Remove the '%' character from the macro name to prevent expansion.

I 404: both input- and outputfile already specified  

This message appears when an extra argument is found after the -o option. This message is followed by fatal erro. F 334.
1 OVERVIEW

This appendix describes the error messages and warnings produced by the assembler \texttt{asm51}. There are three types of messages: fatal errors, assembly errors (E) and assembly warnings (W).

2 FATAL ERRORS

The following errors cause the assembler to exit immediately.

\textit{assertion failed}

This signifies an internal assembler error. If you get this message from the assembler please contact your local TASKING representative.

\textit{cannot open file}

The file \texttt{file} cannot be opened because the file does not exist or the file permissions do not allow access.

\textit{can't reopen file}

The file \texttt{file} cannot be opened because the file does not exist or the file permissions do not allow access.

\textit{can't create file}

The file \texttt{file} cannot be created because the parent directory does not exist, the directory is not writable or \texttt{file} already exists and does not allow write access.

\textit{invalid segment type value}

The segment type can only be of type BIT, CODE, DATA, IDATA or XDATA.

\textit{write error on output file}

An error occurred during a write to the output file.
3 ASSEMBLY ERRORS

The following errors may occur during the assembly process and cause the assembler to stop at the end of the current pass. For errors marked (FATAL), the assembler stops immediately because it is impossible to continue.

E 000: internal error
Something is wrong with the assembler. Assistance can be obtained from your local TASKING representative.

E 001: syntax error
The current line contains a syntax error.

E 003: arithmetic overflow in numeric constant
A number with more than 20 digits is used.

E 004: attempt to divide by zero
Division by zero error during expression evaluation.

E 005: expression with forward reference not allowed
A forward reference was used in the expression defining an equate.

E 007: symbol already defined
An attempt was made to define a symbol which is already defined.

E 012: illegal character in numeric constant
Unexpected letters were found in a numerical constant.

E 015: illegal character
A non-ASCII character was encountered in the input.

E 017: arithmetic overflow in location counter
The location counter overflowed to a value greater than 0FFFFH.

E 018: undefined symbol: symbol
The symbol was not defined local and not declared external.

E 019: value will not fit into a byte
The value of a DB expression is not between –256 and +255.
E 020: operation invalid in this segment
   A **DS, DBIT, DB** or **DW** assembler directive was used in the wrong segment.

E 021: unterminated string
   A string without a terminating single or double quote was encountered.

E 022: string longer than two characters not allowed in this context
   A string, used in an expression, may not be longer than two characters.

E 027: absolute expression expected
   An absolute expression, not containing any relocatable symbols, is required here.

E 028: reference not to current segment
   Conditional instructions cannot have a destination address outside the current segment.

E 031: external reference not allowed in this context
   External references are not allowed in equate definitions or **ORG** assembler directives.

E 032: segment reference not allowed in this context
   Segment names are not allowed in equate definitions.

E 033: too many relocatable segments
   The total number of segments may not exceed 253.

E 035: location counter may not point below segment base
   The location counter may not be set to a value below the segment base address.

E 036: code segment address expected
   The extern label is not of type CODE.

E 040: bytes of bit address not in bitaddressable data segment
   DATA segment must be declared BITADDRESSABLE to enable bit selections.

E 042: bad register bank number
   The register bank number must be 0, 1, 2 or 3.
E 043: invalid simple relocatable expression
   An expression defining the value for an ORG directive may not contain relocatable symbols defined in other segments.

E 044: invalid relocation expression
   An expression must not contain references to different segment types.

E 045: inpage relocated segment overflow
   (segment "segment")
   The size of a segment with the INPAGE attribute exceeds 256.

E 046: inblock relocated segment overflow
   (segment "segment")
   The size of a segment with the INBLOCK attribute exceeds 2048.

E 048: illegal relocation for this segment type
   One of the segment attributes is not allowed for this segment type:
   - PAGE and INPAGE are allowed for CODE and XDATA only.
   - INBLOCK is valid for CODE only,
   - BITADDRESSABLE is valid for DATA only.

E 050: out of memory (FATAL)
   There is not enough memory to continue.

E 052: duplicate segment name, segment already defined
   Each relocatable segment must be declared exactly once.

E 053: illegal segment name, symbol already defined
   The name used in a segment definition is already used in another declaration.

E 054: segment name used before declaration
   A segment should be declared before it is first used.

E 055: numerical argument expected for control "control_name"
   The assembler control control_name requires a numerical argument.

E 056: string argument expected for control "control_name"
   The assembler control control requires an argument enclosed in parenthesis.
E 057: illegal control "control_name"

The assembler control control_name does not exist.

E 058: label already declared external

An attempt was made to define a label which is already declared external.

E 059: label "label" already declared local

The label declared external is already declared local.

E 060: incompatible expression types

The operands of a binary operation have incompatible expression types.

E 061: incompatible segment types

The operands of a binary operation are incompatible, because they are defined in different memory spaces.

E 062: wrong expression type

This error is generated if:

- A bit selection is attempted from a byte which is not in DATA space.
- The type of the expression defining the value for a typed equate does not match the equate type.
- The expression defining the value for an ORG directive has the wrong memory space attribute.

E 063: low/high not allowed here

An expression involving the LOW/HIGH operators and relocatable symbols may not be used as operand in another expression. Thus in a relocatable expression, the operators LOW and HIGH must be at the outermost level.

E 064: file inclusion must be done by the macro processor

The $INCLUDE(file) control must be interpreted by the macro preprocessor, where the control will be erased when the file is included. The assembler signals an error if the control is still there, because the user apparently forgot to invoke the preprocessor.
E 065: unrecoverable syntax error, parser terminated
    The parser encountered a syntax error from which it cannot recover, so
    the parsing is aborted. This error only occurs under very rare
    circumstances. Normally, error number 1 is generated for a syntax
    error.

E 066: value doesn’t fit
    This error is generated when the expression defining a byte value
    evaluates into a number less than -256 or greater than +255.

E 067: bad branch offset
    The offset for a branch or jump is too large to fit in the instruction.

E 069: bad operand
    This type of operand is not allowed for this instruction.

E 070: bad register
    Generated if an indirect register (R0 or R1) is required, but another
    register is used.

E 072: illegal equate
    The assembler cannot evaluate the defining expression of the equate.

E 074: illegal operator
    This error is caused by an illegal operation involving a relocatable
    subexpression. The only operations possible on a relocatable
    (sub-)expression are adding and subtracting an absolute value, and
    performing the LOW or HIGH operation.

E 077: non-bit addressable byte
    The byte used for a bit selection is not a bit-addressable memory
    location.

E 079: relocation overflow
    More than 10 external symbols are used on one source line.

E 080: invalid address for this memory type
    The expression does not correspond to a valid address in the memory
    space associated with the expression.

E 081: overlay not possible for code segment
    The OVERLAY attribute is invalid for segments in CODE memory space.
E 082: phasing error
The value of a symbol in pass 3 is different from its value in pass 2.
This error only occurs under very rare circumstances.

E 083: invalid segment attributes
The number of segment attributes, excluding the OVERLAY attribute, is
greater than one.

E 084: too many externals in expression
It is not allowed to have two external references in one expression.
Make at least one of the symbols global.

E 085: too many controls on command line (FATAL)
The total length of the controls given on the command line exceeds
256 characters.

E 086: string too long
A string longer than 200 characters is encountered.

E 087: bad bit number
A bit number which is not in the range 0–7 is used.

E 088: short relocated segment overflow
(segment "segment")
The size of a segment with the SHORT attribute exceeds 256.

E 089: overlay cannot be combined with page or inpage
When you used the PAGE or INPAGE attribute on the XDATA segment,
you cannot also use the OVERLAY attribute.

E 090: illegal equate: redefinition of symbol, use set
Only the SET directive can be used to redefine a symbol.

E 092: no external memory, operation not allowed
With the NOEXTERNALMEMORY control specified, the MOVX
instruction is not allowed.

E 093: SFR include file "filename" not found
The .sfr file you specified with the -C option cannot be found in the
search path. Check whether the specified .sfr file exists or change the
search path with the -I option.
E 094: mov a,acc is an invalid instruction
    The content of the accumulator after the execution of this instruction is undefined.

E 095: maximum line length (number) exceeded
    A line longer than 1500 characters is encountered.

E 096: using absolute register addresses not allowed
    When the NOREGADDR control is specified the assembler will trigger this error on occurrence of instructions using absolute register addresses like:

        MOV R0,AR1

E 097: unknown command line option: 'option'
    The specified command line option is unknown to the assembler.

E 098: no input file specified
    The assembler requires an input file to be processed, not specifying one triggers this error.
4 ASSEMBLY WARNINGS

The following warnings may occur during the assembly process. Warnings do not cause the assembler to stop premature.

W 002: overlapping ranges in segment

Two parts of the same segment overlap.

W 003: primary control "control" not valid on this place

A primary control may be used only at the beginning of a source file.

W 004: primary control "control" already set

A primary control may not be set more than once.

W 005: unexpected control (internal error)

The assembler encountered an assembler control it does not recognize. This error indicates an inconsistency in the assembler.

W 006: pagewidth too small, set to 64

The page width specified with the \texttt{PAGEWIDTH(width)} control is too small to produce a reasonable listing, so it is set to 64.

W 007: premature end-of-file (no end statement)

The \texttt{END} statement is missing.

W 008: text found beyond end statement – ignored

The \texttt{END} statement is not on the last line of the source file. The remaining lines are ignored, although they appear in the listing.

W 009: symbol table generation not implemented

The generation of a symbol table is not implemented.

W 012: bit table overflow

The bit table used for jump optimizations is full, so that no further optimizations take place.

W 014: cannot allocate memory for corefile

The assembler attempts to speed up disk I/O by using a large buffer in memory. If the allocation of the buffer fails, this warning is generated. If no further errors occur, the output file is created normally.
W 015: xref/noxref controls not implemented

W 016: absolute code address addr already occupied (previous definition on line line_number)

This warning is triggered when the same absolute code address is used more than once.

W 017: absolute xdat address addr already occupied (previous definition on line line_number)

This warning is triggered when the same absolute xdat address is used more than once.

W 018: AJMP/ACALL requires segment 'name’ to have INPAGE or INBLOCK attribute

The AJMP/ACALL instructions require the destination address to be in the same 2 kB block. When you use these instructions in a segment without the INPAGE or INBLOCK attribute this is not guaranteed.
APPENDIX D

LINKER ERROR MESSAGES
1 OVERVIEW

This appendix describes the messages link produces if erroneous situations occur. Three levels of severity are distinguished:

1. Warnings
2. Errors
3. Fatal errors

A warning indicates a situation where the linker makes assumptions how the link has to take place. This might lead to a result you do not want. The linker finishes all its tasks after generating a warning. A complete output file is produced.

Error conditions may cause the linker to terminate before the complete output file is written. If they occur in the first phase (reading the input modules) the only task the linker performs, is to calculate the possible link map of the segments and produce a listing file. The second pass (writing the output file) is omitted. If errors occur in the second pass an output file is produced. You are recommended not to use this file for further program development but fix the errors and re-link your program.

Fatal errors are generated if the linker detects situations where it cannot continue at all. The program exits immediately.

2 WARNINGS

WARNING 1 : unresolved external symbol 'symbol_name', module module_name

A symbol is declared external without being defined public in any of the modules in the program.

WARNING 2 : reference made to unresolved external, symbol 'symbol_name', module module_name

A symbol reference of an unresolved external is found in a fixup record. The linker created a symbol record for such a symbol but its value will be zero. Thus it is unlikely that the relocated code address gets the proper value.
**WARNING 3**: *assigned address not compatible with alignment, segment 'segment_name'*

The absolute address specified in one of the locating controls on the command line is not compatible with the relocation attribute of the segment (PAGE, INPAGE or INBLOCK). The segment start address will be the one on the command line, the relocation attribute will be overruled.

**WARNING 4**: *data space memory overlap, from byte.bit_address to byte.bit_address*

Two internal ram segments are located within the same address range.

**WARNING 5**: *code space memory overlap, from byte.bit_address to byte.bit_address*

Two code segments are located in the same address range.

**WARNING 6**: *xdata space memory overlap, from byte.bit_address to byte.bit_address*

Two external data segments are located in the same address range.

**WARNING 7**: *module name not unique, module module_name(filename)*

A module name in one of the archives or the plain object files occurs twice.

**WARNING 10**: *maximum number of modules exceeded (255) overlay disabled*

If overlay is enabled the maximum number of modules in a program is 255. Each module in a library is counted as a separate one. If this number is exceeded, which is detected in the first pass, overlaying is switched off automatically. Linking proceeds normally.

**WARNING 11**: *control 'name' not supported*

A number of controls supported by the Intel assembler are not supported. See also the section *Linker Implementation* for more information on this subject.

**WARNING 12**: *cannot allocate memory for corefile*

The linker attempts to speed up input–output actions by creating a large buffer in memory. If the allocation request for the buffer fails, this warning is displayed. If no further errors occur the output file is created normally.
**WARNING 13**: more than one registerbank specified, segment `segm' not overlaid

When using the FUNCTIONOVERLAY control, all overlayable data segments may have only one register bank specified. Otherwise the segment is treated as non-overlayable.

**WARNING 14**: no corresponding code segment found, segment `segm' not overlaid

When using the FUNCTIONOVERLAY control, data segments are overlaid by using a naming convention. When no code segment is found to the data segment, the data will not be overlaid.

**WARNING 15**: functionoverlay and overlay cannot be used at the same time control `name' ignored

Only one control of FUNCTIONOVERLAY and OVERLAY can be supported at the same time. The last given control is ignored.

**WARNING 16**: control 'GRAPH' only supported when control 'functionoverlay' is selected

Function call graphs can only be made when FUNCTIONOVERLAY is done.

**WARNING 17**: functionoverlay (* > *) is ignored

It is of no use to specify all functions calling all other functions. The result would be that no data is overlayable with any other data.

**WARNING 18**: recursive call from `segm1' to `segm2'

When specifying the FUNCTIONOVERLAY control, the linker checks for recursion between code segments. When recursion is found, the first found relation of the segments causing the recursion is displayed. This warning may not be ignored, because the application probably will not run anyway. Unresolved externals may cause this warning to occur also.

**WARNING 19**: error in command line option: option

See the description of the option for the correct invocation syntax.
WARNING 20 : cannot find segment name

A segment name in one of the locating controls on the command line does not exist. The segment name in the control is ignored.

WARNING 21 : this bank switch method is no longer supported, please use the alternate method

The previous linker version supported two methods to perform bank switching, one of these two methods is no longer supported.

WARNING 22 : multiple interrupts defined for vector address addr (modules 'modA' and 'modB')

When the same interrupt vector is used in multiple modules this warning will be triggered.

WARNING 23 : overlapping interrupts: addr('mod')<->addr('mod')

Some devices allow for interrupts to be defined on alternative address ranges. This warning is triggered when multiple interrupts overlap each other.

WARNING 24 : different accelerated interrupt base values used: addr('mod')<->addr('mod')

Some devices allow for specification of an interrupt base address. When multiple modules define different base values this warning is triggered.

3 ERROR MESSAGES

ERROR 101 : segment 'segment_name' combination error in module module_name

A segment is declared in two modules with different memory types or relocation types. Errors of this type are detected in the first pass of the linkage process. The linker terminates after creating a list file. An output file is not made.

ERROR 102 : external attribute mismatch, symbol 'symbol_name', module filename(module_name)

A symbol is declared external in two or more modules. The attributes of the symbol are used in conflicting context. e.g. declared twice with a different memory type.
ERROR 103 : **external attributes do not match public,**  
**symbol 'symbol_name', module filename(module_name)**  
The attributes of a symbol declared public in one module and external in  
another are in conflict with each other. E.g. it is not allowed to declare a  
symbol as a code label in one module and use it as a data label in the  
other module.

ERROR 104 : **multiple public definition, symbol 'symbol_name',**  
**module filename(module_name)**  
A symbol is defined public in more than one module. This is not allowed.  
Public symbols must be unique in the entire application.

ERROR 106 : **segment 'segment_name' overflow**  
The size of a segment is larger than the size allowed for the memory type  
it belongs to. This error can only occur after combining two or more  
partial segments into one segment. The assembler checks whether a partial  
segment is within its limits.

ERROR 107 : **address space overflow, space 'memory_type_name'**  
**segment 'segment_name' (size value)**  
The linker is unable to link the specified segment within the valid range  
for the memory type. Other segments used the available space for the  
specified memory type.

ERROR 108 : **segment in locating control cannot be allocated,**  
**segment 'segment_name'**  
The linker cannot find free memory space for the segment specified in a  
locating control on the command line ( precede, bit, data,... ).

ERROR 109 : **empty relocatable segment 'segment_name'**  
The linker found a segment with size 0. This message is displayed only if  
the CHECK control is effective. Empty segments are accepted otherwise.

ERROR 110 : **cannot find segment 'segment_name'**  
A segment name in one of the locating controls on the command line does  
not exist. The segment name in the control is ignored.
**ERROR 111** : *specified bit not on byte boundary, segment ‘segment_name’*

Segments in the BIT locating control that are not of the memory type bit must have a starting address that is divisible by eight. If in the BIT control this rule is violated, the error message mentioned above appears.

**ERROR 112** : *segment type not legal for command, segment ‘segment_name’*

In one of the locating controls on the command line a segment is used that has a memory type not permitted for that control.

**ERROR 114** : *segment ‘segment_name’ does not fit: start, end*

A segment in one of the locating controls cannot be located at the specified address within the valid range for the memory type the segment belongs to.

**ERROR 115** : *inpage segment ‘segment_name’ is greater than 256 bytes*

A segment defined with the INPAGE attribute has, after the partial segments have been combined by the linker, become greater than 256 bytes. The segment is ignored.

**ERROR 116** : *inblock segment ‘segment_name’ is greater than 2048 bytes*

After combining the partial segments, each of which have been declared with the INBLOCK attribute, the segments has become greater than 2048 bytes.

**ERROR 117** : *bit addressable segment ‘segment_name’ is greater than 16 bytes*

A bitaddressable segment is greater than the bitaddressable memory space of the 8051. The segment is ignored.

**ERROR 118** : *reference made to erroneous external, symbol ‘symbol_name’, module module_name, reference: code_address*

A relocation record in the object file refers to an ignored symbol. The symbol is ignored because of an error reported in an earlier stage of the link process. The fixup of the code address will be wrong because the linker does not know the correct value of the symbol.
**ERROR 119** : *reference made to erroneous segment, symbol 'symbol_name', module module_name, reference: code_address*

A fixup record is found referring to a segment that caused an error in a previous stage. The fixup will produce wrong code bytes at the specified location.

**ERROR 121** : *improper fixup, module 'module_name', segment 'segment_name', name 'name', offset 'code_address_in_segment'*

The calculated value for a fixup of a code address exceeds the value that fits in the number of bytes that will be fixed up. E.g. the value for a one byte operand has become greater than 255; the destination of an *ajmp* is in a different 2K block than the jump itself.

**ERROR 123** : *absolute idata segment does not fit, module module_name, from start_address to end_address*

The absolute addresses of one of the ranges of an absolute IDATA segment is outside the valid range. The linker default of internal RAM is 7FH. If there is IDATA space above this value the RAMSIZE control must be used to inform the linker.

**ERROR 126** : *overlay module module_name not found*

One of the module names mentioned in the OVERLAY control cannot be found in the input files.

**ERROR 127** : *overlay data address space overflow, space 'memory_space_name'*

The linker can not locate a number of overlaid segments in internal data. After determining the possible overlay structure, the linker treats groups of overlaid segments as if they were one (greater) segment. It is possible that this 'one' segment is greater than the available memory space. However, the linker can place the individual segments in small gaps that are not yet occupied. It is advisable to run the linker with NOOVERLAY to see if this is the case.

**ERROR 128** : *cannot allocate stubs in bank_name*

The linker did not succeed in locating the stubs in the specified bank.
ERROR 129 : code references between different banks, segment1 <=> segment2

The linker detected code references between different code banks, this may result in runtime errors.

ERROR 130 : stub not found for call from src to dst

When using bank switching all calls between different banks have to go through a special stub that performs the actual bank switch.

ERROR 131 : too many banks specified (option)

The linker supports up to a maximum of 256 banks.

ERROR 132 : error in option option: error

The specified command line option has a syntax error.

ERROR 133 : code space memory overlap between segments segA and segB, range: start-end

Two segments have an overlap in the code space.

ERROR 134 : segment segment_name combination error in module module, attribute 'attr' mismatch

Two segments with the same name are defined with different segment attributes.

4 FATAL ERRORS

FATAL ERROR 201 : invalid command line syntax 'partial command'

The command line is not in the correct syntax.

FATAL ERROR 204 : invalid key word 'name'

The linker expected a keyword on the command line. The text found does not match one of the known keywords.

FATAL ERROR 205 : numeric constant too large 'partial command'

A numeric constant in the command line is outside the valid range. If a constant greater than 0FFFFFH is entered the message is generated.
FATAL ERROR 206 : invalid constant 'partial command'
The linker expected a constant in one of the controls on the command line. This constant is not there, or is is misspelled.

FATAL ERROR 207 : invalid name 'partial command'
A invalid name is found on the command line.

FATAL ERROR 209 : file used in conflicting context, file filename
One of the filenames on the command line or in the linker command file causes the linker to produce the same filename for one of the input files and the output file. Since this is a conflicting situation for most operating systems the error message is displayed.

FATAL ERROR 210 : I/O error 'error', input file 'filename'
An I/O error occurred on an attempt to open an input file. The file does not exist or cannot be read.

FATAL ERROR 211 : I/O error, output file 'filename'
The output file the linker wants to produce cannot be created. Probably the file already exists and cannot be overwritten, or the filename is invalid.

FATAL ERROR 212 : I/O error, listing file 'filename'
The listing file cannot be created.

FATAL ERROR 213 : I/O error, temporary file 'filename'
The linker creates a temporary file in the current directory if OVERLAY is enabled. If this file cannot be created the error message above is displayed.

FATAL ERROR 214 : input phase error, file: 'filename'
The input in the second phase differs from the input read in the first phase. Probably a file is overwritten or corrupted by the linker in the first phase.

FATAL ERROR 216 : insufficient memory
All memory that can be allocated dynamically by the linker is used. This happens only with very large applications using great number of PUBLIC and EXTERNAL symbol definitions.
**FATAL ERROR 217 : no module to be processed**

There is no module in the list of modules to be processed after reading all the input files. This is probably because there are only libraries in the input file list.

**FATAL ERROR 218 : not an object file 'filename'**

The input file does not have the valid object code file format.

**FATAL ERROR 219 : not an 8051 object file 'filename'**

The input file is in the object code file format but is not created by *asm51*.

**FATAL ERROR 220 : invalid input module 'module_name'**

The input module is not in the correct object format. The linker recognized it as a valid object file (the file header is correct). Reading the rest of the file the contents turned out to be erroneous.

**FATAL ERROR 222 : segment 'segment_name' specified more than once**

A segment name is mentioned more than once, or in conflicting context, in the locating controls on the command line.

**FATAL ERROR 224 : duplicate keyword 'name'**

A keyword in the control–part of the command line is used twice.

**FATAL ERROR 226 : segment address invalid for control**

In one of the locating controls an address is used that is outside the valid range off the memory type the segment belongs to.

**FATAL ERROR 227 : pagewidth parameter out of range**

The value in the PAGEWIDTH control is outside the valid range (78 – 132).

**FATAL ERROR 228 : ramsize parameter out of range**

The value in the RAMSIZE control is outside the valid range (80H – 100H).

**FATAL ERROR 229 : I/O error overlay file 'filename'**

The size of the symbol table item reference is greater than 4.
**FATAL ERROR 240** : *internal process error*

If this error appears please fill in a software problem report and send it to your TASKING representative. This error indicates a failure in the internal administration of the linker. It is not caused directly by the input program.

**FATAL ERROR 242** : *segment limit (64k) exceeded*

A maximum of 64K segments is allowed.

**FATAL ERROR 250** : *overlay function 'func' not found*

Given function (code segment) was given in the FUNCTIONOVERLAY control, but does not exist.

**FATAL ERROR 251** : *object file has wrong version, file 'filename'*

link51 only accepts object files in the new object format; given object file has the wrong object type. Create the object file again by using the new assembler and link again.

**FATAL ERROR 252** : *input file not in correct OMF51 format, file 'filename'*

One of the input files is recognized as a file in OMF51 format (either object file or object library). The administration in this file is found to be corrupt: i.e. a sumcheck is incorrect or an invalid relocation type is read.

**FATAL ERROR 253** : *duplicate filename: output and command file*

You cannot overwrite the command file. Use another name for the output file.

**FATAL ERROR 255** : *too many symbols, unable to continue*

There is not enough memory to allocate all symbols.

**FATAL ERROR 256** : *no stub found*

To support code bank switching a stub segment is required.

**FATAL ERROR 257** : *xpage parameter out of range*

The page number in the XPAGE control is outside the valid range (0 – 255).

**FATAL ERROR 258** : *string too long: 'string'*

A string longer than 200 characters is encountered.
**FATAL ERROR 259 : too many library rescans**

When you use the MULTIPASS control the linker rescans all libraries to resolve as many externals as possible. A fail-safe method is implemented to prevent the rescan mechanism to enter an endless loop, this fatal error is triggered when a certain amount of rescans is reached.

**FATAL ERROR 300 : too many segments**

The maximum number of segments is exceeded. This number is 1250.

**FATAL ERROR 301 : input file not in proper archive format,**

*format*, *file: file*

One of the input files is recognized as an library file. This file turns out to be an improperly organized archive. You can resynchronize the archive using the *ar51* utility. See also the manual page in the *Utilities* chapter in this manual.

**FATAL ERROR 302 : internal error, assertion failed: filename lineno**

This error message indicates the linker got into an undefined state. Recovery from this state is not possible. This can be caused by a lot of reasons. The most likely one is that one of the input files is corrupted, though not that severe that it caused error number 220. If you checked this over and you still do not see what went wrong please contact your TASKING representative.

**FATAL ERROR 303 : non-bitaddressable byte in fixup**

The assembler produced a fixup record for a symbolic reference to a bitaddressable byte. After the first link phase this symbol turns out to outside the bitaddressable byte area. To fix this problem, check if you are referring to the correct external symbol. If so, locate the segment in which the symbol is contained inside the bitaddressable area either by giving it the bitaddressable attribute or by using a locating control.

**FATAL ERROR 304 : fixup error: value too big for relocation, size: value**

The linker detected a situation after calculating the value for a relocatable expression, in which this value became too big for the number of bytes reserved in the code part. This message is followed by message number 121 giving you the information you need to fix this problem.

**FATAL ERROR 305 : assertion failed**

See fatal error 302.
**FATAL ERROR 306 : module selection not supported**

A control was found on the command line while an input file was expected. The input filename must not contain parenthesis `('.

**FATAL ERROR 307 : short segment 'segment_name' cannot be located in first xdata page**

The linker cannot place given segment into the first page of XDATA memory. Other SHORT segments or absolute segments may have filled this space already.
INTEL HEX RECORDS
Intel Hex records describe the hexadecimal object file format for 8-bit, 16-bit and 32-bit microprocessors. The hexadecimal object file is an ASCII representation of an absolute binary object file. There are six different types of records:

- Data Record (8-, 16, or 32-bit formats)
- End of File Record (8-, 16, or 32-bit formats)
- Extended Segment Address Record (16, or 32-bit formats)
- Start Segment Address Record (16, or 32-bit formats)
- Extended Linear Address Record (32-bit format only)
- Start Linear Address Record (32-bit format only)

The `ihex51` program generates records in the 8-bit format by default. When a section jumps over a 64k limit the program switches to 32-bit records automatically. 16-bit records can be forced with the `-i16` option.

**General Record Format**

In the output file, the record format is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>:</th>
<th>length</th>
<th>offset</th>
<th>type</th>
<th>content</th>
<th>checksum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Where:

: is the record header.

`length` is the record length which specifies the number of bytes of the `content` field. This value occupies one byte (two hexadecimal digits). The locator outputs records of 255 bytes (32 hexadecimal digits) or less; that is, `length` is never greater than FFH.

`offset` is the starting load offset specifying an absolute address in memory where the data is to be located when loaded by a tool. This field is two bytes long. This field is only used for Data Records. In other records this field is coded as four ASCII zero characters ('0000').

`type` is the record type. This value occupies one byte (two hexadecimal digits). The record types are:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Byte Type</th>
<th>Record type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td>End of File</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>Extended segment address (20-bit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td>Start segment address (20-bit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td>Extended linear address (32-bit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05</td>
<td>Start linear address (32-bit)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **content** is the information contained in the record. This depends on the record type.
- **checksum** is the record checksum. The locator computes the checksum by first adding the binary representation of the previous bytes (from `length` to `content`). The locator then computes the result of sum modulo 256 and subtracts the remainder from 256 (two’s complement). Therefore, the sum of all bytes following the header is zero.

**Extended Linear Address Record**

The Extended Linear Address Record specifies the two most significant bytes (bits 16–31) of the absolute address of the first data byte in a subsequent Data Record:

\[
\text{upper_address} = (\text{address} + \text{offset} + \text{index}) \mod 4G
\]

where:

- **address** is the base address, where the two most significant bytes are the `upper_address` and the two least significant bytes are zero.
- **offset** is the 16–bit offset from the Data Record.
- **index** is the index of the data byte within the Data Record (0 for the first byte).
Example:

:020000400FFFFB
   |   |   |   |__ checksum
   |   |   |__ upper_address
   |   |__ type
   |__ offset
__ length

**Extended Segment Address Record**

The Extended Segment Address Record specifies the two most significant bytes (bits 4–19) of the absolute address of the first data byte in a subsequent Data Record, where bits 0–3 are zero:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>:</th>
<th>02</th>
<th>0000</th>
<th>02</th>
<th>upper_address</th>
<th>checksum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The 20-bit absolute address of a byte in a Data Record is calculated as:

\[
\text{address} + ( ( \text{offset} + \text{index} ) \pmod{64K} )
\]

where:

- **address** is the base address, where bits 4–19 are the *upper_address* and bits 0–3 are zero.
- **offset** is the 16-bit offset from the Data Record.
- **index** is the index of the data byte within the Data Record (0 for the first byte).

Example:

:020000200FFFFD
   |   |   |   |__ checksum
   |   |   |__ upper_address
   |   |__ type
   |__ offset
__ length
Data Record

The Data Record specifies the actual program code and data.

| : | length | offset | 00 | data | checksum |

The length byte specifies the number of data bytes. The locator has an option that controls the length of the output buffer for generating Data records. The default buffer length is 32 bytes.

The offset is the 16-bit starting load offset. Together with the address specified in the Extended Address Record it specifies an absolute address in memory where the data is to be located when loaded by a tool.

Example:

:0F002000023222754E00754F04AF4FAE4E2C3
| | | | data
| | | type
| | offset
| length

Start Linear Address Record

The Start Linear Address Record contains the 32-bit program execution start address.

Layout:

| : | 04 | 0000 | 05 | address | checksum |

Example:

:0400000500FF0003F5
| | | checksum
| address
| type
| offset
| length
Start Segment Address Record

The Start Segment Address Record contains the 20-bit program execution start address.

Layout:

| :  | 04 | 0000 | 03 | address | checksum |

Example:

:0400000300F0003F7

| | | | | checksum |
| | | | address |
| | | type |
| | offset |
| length |

End of File Record

The hexadecimal file always ends with the following end-of-file record:

:00000001FF

| | | checksum |
| | type |
| offset |
| length |
The **srec51** program generates three types of S-records by default: S0, S1 and S9. S1 records are used for 16-bit addresses. With the **-r2** option of **srec51** S2 records are used (for 24-bit addresses) and with **-r3** S3 records are used (for 32-bit addresses). They have the following layout:

**S0 – record**

'S' '0' <length_byte> <2 bytes 0> <comment> <checksum_byte>

An **srec51** generated S-record file starts with a S0 record with the following contents:

- length_byte : 14H
- comment : (c) TASKING, Inc.
- checksum : 72H

(c) TASKING, Inc.
S0140000286329205441534B494E472C20496E632E72

The S0 record is a comment record and does not contain relevant information for program execution.

The length_byte represents the number of bytes in the record, not including the record type and length byte.

The checksum is calculated by first adding the binary representation of the bytes following the record type (starting with the length_byte) to just before the checksum. Then the one's complement is calculated of this sum. The least significant byte of the result is the checksum. The sum of all bytes following the record type is 0FFH.
**S1 - record**

With the `-r1` option of `srec51`, which is the default for `srec51`, the actual program code and data is supplied with S1 records, with the following layout:

'S' '1' <length_byte> <address> <code bytes> <checksum_byte>

This record is used for 2-byte addresses.

Example:

```
S1 130250F03EF04DF0ACE8A408A2A013EDFCDB00E6
```

|   |   |   |       |_ checksum
|   |   | code
|   | address
| length

`srec51` has an option that controls the length of the output buffer for generating S1 records.

The checksum calculation of S1 records is identical to S0.

**S9 - record**

With the `-r1` option of `srec51`, which is the default for `srec51`, at the end of an S-record file, `srec51` generates an S9 record, which contains the program start address. S9 is the corresponding termination record for S1 records.

Layout:

'S' '9' <length_byte> <address> <checksum_byte>

Example:

```
S9030000FC
```

|   |   |       |_ checksum
|   | address
| length

The checksum calculation of S9 records is identical to S0.
**S2 - record**

With the `-r2` option of `srec51` the actual program code and data is supplied with S2 records, with the following layout:

'S' '2' `<length_byte>` `<address>` `<code bytes>` `<checksum_byte>`

This record is used for 3-byte addresses.

Example:

```
S213FF00200023222754E00754F04AF4FAE4E22BF
  |    |   | code
  |    |   | checksum
  |    | address
  | length
```

`srec51` has an option that controls the length of the output buffer for generating S2 records. The default buffer length is 32 code bytes.

The checksum calculation of S2 records is identical to S0.

**S8 - record**

With the `-r2` option of `srec51` at the end of an S–record file, `srec51` generates an S8 record, which contains the program start address. S8 is the corresponding termination record for S2 records.

Layout:

'S' '8' `<length_byte>` `<address>` `<checksum_byte>`

Example:

```
S804FF0003F9
  |    |   | checksum
  |    |   | address
  | length
```

The checksum calculation of S8 records is identical to S0.
**S3 - record**

With the `-r3` option of `srec51` the actual program code and data is supplied with S3 records, with the following layout:

'S' '3' <length_byte> <address> <code bytes> <checksum_byte>

This record is used for 4-byte addresses.

Example:

```
S3070000000FFFE6E6825
```

srec51 has an option that controls the length of the output buffer for generating S3 records.

The checksum calculation of S3 records is identical to S0.

**S7 - record**

With the `-r3` option of `srec51` at the end of an S-record file, `srec51` generates an S7 record, which contains the program start address. S7 is the corresponding termination record for S3 records.

Layout:

'S' '7' <length_byte> <address> <checksum_byte>

Example:

```
S70500006E6824
```

The checksum calculation of S7 records is identical to S0.
Symbols

.DEFAULT, 10–29
.DONE, 10–29
.IGNORE, 10–30
.INIT, 10–30
.lst, file extension, 3–4
.precious, 10–30
.silent, 10–30
.src, file extension, 3–4
.suffixes, 10–30
ifdef, 7–5
?line directive, 7–6
?symb directive, 7–7
$, 7–4
$ (location counter), 6–7
$include, 2–13, 2–23
%’’, 2–34
%( ), 2–36
%{ }, 2–37
__FILE__, 2–54
__LINE__, 2–54
.ERROR, 2–53
.FATAL, 2–53
__FILE__ function, 2–54
__LINE__ function, 2–54
__LK__, 9–78

da.out
  file header, A–5
  file header (2), A–6
a.out file format, A–1
addition and subtraction, 6–11
address space, 6–3
addressing modes
  bit, 6–5
  code, 6–6
  data, 6–5
  immediate, 6–4
indirect, 6–4
algorithm, evaluation of macro calls, 2–62
ar51, 1–3, 10–4
arithmetic operators, 6–11
asm51, 1–3
controls
  asmlineinfo, 5–6
  bypass, 5–7
  case/nocase, 5–8
  date, 5–9
  debug/nodebug, 5–10
  debuginfo, 5–11
  eject, 5–12
  errorprint/noerrorprint, 5–13
  gen/genonly/nogen, 5–14
  include, 5–15
  list/nolist, 5–16
  listall/nolistall, 5–17
  macro/nomacro, 5–18
  message, 5–19
  mod51/nomod51, 5–20
  noexternalmemory, 5–21
  object/noobject, 5–22
  optimize/nooptimize, 5–23
  overview of, 5–4–5–35
  pagelength, 5–24
  pagewidth, 5–25
  paging/nopaging, 5–26
  print/noprint, 5–27
  regaddr/noregaddr, 5–28
  registerbank/noregisterbank, 5–29
  save/restore, 5–30
  smallrom, 5–31
  symbols/nosymbols, 5–32
  title, 5–33
  workfiles, 5–34
  xref/noxref, 5–35
error messages, C–1
general controls, 5–3
options, 3–4
primary controls, 5–3
ASMDIR, 2–13, 2–23
asmlineinfo, 5–6
assembler, 3–1
  input files and output files, 3–4
  invocation, 3–3
  options summary, 3–4
assembler controls, 5–1
  overview of, 5–4–5–35
assembler directives, 7–1
  ?file, 7–5
  ?line, 7–6
  ?symb, 7–7
  bit, 7–8
  bseg, 7–9
  code, 7–10
  cseg, 7–11
  data, 7–12
  db, 7–13
  dbit, 7–14
  ds, 7–15
  dseg, 7–16
  dw, 7–17
  end, 7–18
  equ, 7–19
  extrn, 7–20
  idata, 7–21
  iseg, 7–22
  name, 7–23
  org, 7–24
  public, 7–25
  rseg, 7–26
  segment, 7–27
  set, 7–29
  using, 7–30
  xdata, 7–31
  xseg, 7–32
assembler options
  –?, 3–5
  –C, 3–6
  –I, 3–7
assembly source file, 3–4

B
  backward referencing, in libraries, 9–83
  bank, link51 control, 9–29
  bank id, 9–12
  bank operator, 6–14
  bank switching, 9–11, 9–12, 9–13, 9–74
    common area, 9–76
    function pointers, 9–77
    locating algorithm, 9–76
    resources, 9–77
    write your own bank switch routine, 9–75
  binary operator, 6–10
  bit
    assembler directive, 7–8
    locate control, 9–27
    locating control, 9–32
  bit address control, 9–32
  bit addresses, 6–16
  bitaddressable, 7–27
  bitwise and operator, 6–13
  bitwise not operator, 6–13
  bitwise operators, 6–13
  bitwise or operator, 6–13
  bitwise xor operator, 6–13
  bracket function, 2–36
  bseg, 7–9
  built-in functions, 2–24
  bypass, asm51 control, 5–7

C
  call graph, 9–49
  case
    asm51 control, 5–8
    link51 control, 9–34
  CC51INC, 10–32
CC51LIB, 9–18
check, link51 control, 9–35
code
  assembler directive, 7–10
  locate control, 9–27
  locating control, 9–36
code address space, 6–3, 7–27
code addresses, 6–17
code bank, 9–11
command file, 2–10, 9–16
command line processing, 2–10, 9–16
comment function, 2–34
common, link51 control, 9–37
common area, 7–27, 9–13, 9–76
conditional assembly, 2–44, 2–45, 2–46
console I/O, built-in functions, 2–55
control flow functions, 2–43
current address space, 6–3, 7–27
current addresses, 6–17
current code bank, 9–11
current command file, 2–10, 9–16
current command line processing, 2–10, 9–16
current comment function, 2–34
current common, link51 control, 9–37
control lines, 5–3
controls
  ignored by link51, 9–83
  linker, 9–23
creating and calling macros, 2–24
creating macros with parameters, 2–29
cross-reference, 9–82
cseg, 7–11
data
  assembler directive, 7–12
  locate control, 9–27
  locating control, 9–39
data address space, 6–3, 7–27
data addresses, 6–16
date, asm51 control, 5–9
db, 7–13
dbit, 7–14
ddebug, asm51 control, 5–10
define, 2–24, 2–25
delimiters, 2–56
  identifier, 2–57
  implied blank, 2–56
  literal, 2–58
derivatives, 3–6
development flow, 1–4
directive, 4–3
directives, 7–1
directives overview, 7–3
division, 6–12
dmp51, 1–3, 10–7
dot operator, 6–14
ds, 7–15
dseg, 7–16
dw, 7–17
eject, asm51 control, 5–12
else, 2–44, 10–24
end assembly, 10–24
endif, 10–24
environment variables
  ASMDIR, 1–5, 2–13, 2–23
  CC51INC, 1–5, 10–32
  CC51LIB, 1–5, 9–18
  HOME, 10–23
  LIBDIR, 10–32
  LM_LICENSE_FILE, 1–5
  overview of, 1–5
  PATH, 1–5, 10–32
  TASKING_LIC_WAIT, 1–5
  TMPDIR, 1–5, 1–6
  used by toolchain, 1–5
eqs function, 2–42
equ, 7–19
equal operator, 6–12
error function, 2–53
error list file, 3–4
error messages
  assembler, 1–8, C–1
  linker, D–1
  macro preprocessor, B–1
errorprint, asm51 control, 5–13
escape function, 2–35
eval function, 2–41
exit function, 2–49
expression string, 6–8
expressions, 6–7
  absolute, 6–7
  relocatable, 6–7
extension, 1–7
  .abs, 1–7
  .asm, 1–7
  .bex, 1–7
  .l51, 1–7
  .lib, 1–7
  .lst, 1–7
  .obj, 1–7
  .out, 1–7
  .src, 1–7
  .sre, 1–7
extension header, A–9
extension records, A–8
external memory, 5–21
external RAM page, 9–72
extrn, 7–20

F
fatal function, 2–53
fbranch, link51 control, 9–44
fi, 2–44
file extensions, 1–7
file header, A–4
flash tools, 10–9
flashphytec, 10–9
flashsilabs51, 10–9
flashwinbond, 10–9
function branch, 9–44
function overlay, prevent, 9–44
function overlay, link51 control, 9–45

G
gen, 5–14
genonly, 5–14
ges function, 2–42
graph, link51 control, 9–31, 9–49
greater than operator, 6–12
greater than or equal operator, 6–12
group function, 2–37
gts function, 2–42

H
high, 6–14
HOME, 10–23

I
idata, 7–21
  locate control, 9–27
  locating control, 9–50
idata address space, 6–3, 7–27
identifier, 4–3
identifier delimiters, 6–3, 7–27
ieee51, 1–3, 10–11
if function, 2–44
ifdef, 10–24
ifndef, 10–24
ifndef function, 2–46
in function, 2–55
inblock, 7–28
include, 5–15
include files, 6–17
  setting search directories, 1–5
inpage, 7–27
input files, linker, 9–6
input specification, 4–1
instruction, 4–3
instruction set, 8–1
Intel hex, record type, E–3
interrupt routine, prevent overlaying, 9–44
invocation
  assembler, 3–3
  linker, 9–5
  mpp51, 2–4
iseg, 7–22

L

label, 4–3
  linker, 9–78
len function, 2–50
les function, 2–42
less than operator, 6–12
less than or equal operator, 6–12
LIBDIR, 10–32
libraries, 9–10, 9–18, 9–19
  backward referencing, 9–83
libraries (OMF51), backward referencing, 9–81
library, 9–5
  linking, 9–79
  position, 9–79
  rescan, 9–79
library search path, 9–18
license, wait for available license, 1–5
license file, setting search directory, 1–5
lines, link51 control, 9–52
link51, 1–3
  controls, 9–23
  listing controls, 9–28
  locating controls, 9–25
  naming conventions, 9–4
options, 9–8
link51 controls
  bank, 9–29
  bit, 9–32
  case/nocase, 9–34
  check/nocheck, 9–35
  code, 9–36
  common, 9–37
  data, 9–39
  debuglines/nodebuglines, 9–41
  debugpublics/nodebugpublics, 9–42
  debugsymbols/nodebugsymbols, 9–43
  fbranch, 9–44
  functionoverlay, 9–45
  graph, 9–31, 9–49
  idata, 9–50
  ignored controls, 9–83
  lines/nolines, 9–52
  map/nomap, 9–53
  multipass, 9–54
  name, 9–55
  overlay/nooverlay, 9–56
  overview, 9–23
  pagewidth, 9–59
  precede, 9–60
  print/noprint, 9–62
  publics/nopublics, 9–63
  ramsize, 9–64
  reserve, 9–65
  stack, 9–67
  symbols/nosymbols, 9–69
  to, 9–70
  xdata, 9–71
  xpage, 9–72
linker, 9–1
  command file, 9–6
  convert errors to warnings, 9–22
  convert warnings to errors, 9–14
  error messages, D–1
  implementation, 9–82
  input files, 9–6
  invocation, 9–5
labels, 9–78
object format, 9–82
options summary, 9–8
output files, 9–6
linker functions, 9–4
linker options
–?, 9–9
–A, 9–10
–bankids, 9–12
–banks, 9–11
–common, 9–13
–e, 9–14
–err, 9–15
–f, 9–16
–L, 9–18
–l, 9–19
–o, 9–20
–V, 3–8, 9–21
–w, 9–22
linking controls, 9–25
linking with libraries, 9–79
list, asm51 control, 5–16
list file, 3–4
listall, asm51 control, 5–17
literal delimiters, 2–58
literal mode, 2–60
local, 2–31
local symbols in macros, 2–31
locating, reserve memory, 9–65
locating algorithm, 9–25, 9–76
locating controls, 9–25
bit, 9–27, 9–32
code, 9–27, 9–36
data, 9–27, 9–39
format, 9–26
idata, 9–27, 9–50
overview of, 9–27
precede, 9–27, 9–60
stack, 9–27, 9–67
xdata, 9–27, 9–71
location counter, 6–7, 7–4
logical expressions, mpp51, 2–42
low, 6–14

M
macrol, 5–18
macro delimiters, 2–29, 2–56
macro name, 2–25
macro preprocessor, 2–1
macros
creating and calling, 2–24
local symbols in, 2–31
parameterless, 2–25
user–defined, 2–24
with parameters, 2–29
makefile, 10–21
map, link51 control, 9–53
match function, 2–52
memory
external, 5–21
reserve, 9–65
message, asm51 control, 5–19
metachar function, 2–38
metacharacter, 2–24, 2–38
minus operator, 6–11
mk51, 10–21
.DEFAULT target, 10–29
.DONE target, 10–29
.IGNORE target, 10–30
.INIT target, 10–30
.PRECIOUS target, 10–30
.SILENT target, 10–30
.SUFFIXES target, 10–30
comment lines, 10–24
conditional processing, 10–24
exist function, 10–28
export line, 10–24
functions, 10–27
ifdef, 10–24
implicit rules, 10–31
include line, 10–24
macro definition, 10–23
macro MAKE, 10-26
macro MAKEFLAGS, 10-26
macro PRODDIR, 10-26
macro SHELLCMD, 10-26
macros, 10-25
makefiles, 10-23
match function, 10-27
nexist function, 10-28
protect function, 10-28
rules in makefile, 10-30
separate function, 10-27
special macros, 10-26
special targets, 10-29
targets, 10-28
mod51, asm51 control, 5-20
module, 9-5
module selection, 9-83
OMF51, 9-81
modulo, 6-12
mpp51, 1-3
advanced concepts, 2-56
built-in functions, 2-33
__FILE__ function, 2-54
__LINE__ function, 2-54
bracket function, 2-36
comment function, 2-34
define, 2-24, 2-25
eqs, 2-42
error function, 2-53
escape function, 2-35
eval, 2-41
exit, 2-49
fatal function, 2-53
ges, 2-42
group function, 2-37
gts, 2-42
if, 2-44
ifdef, 2-46
ifndef, 2-46
in, 2-55
len, 2-50
les, 2-42
lts, 2-42
match, 2-52
nes, 2-42
option, 2-54
out, 2-55
repeat, 2-48
set, 2-40
substr, 2-51
undef, 2-41
while, 2-47
control flow functions, 2-43
equal function, 2-51
equal-undefined-macro, 2-42
equals, 2-42
expr, 2-41
expression, 2-41
expressions, 2-42
include files, 2-23
include, 2-23
introduction, 2-3
invocation, 2-4
local symbols, 2-31
logical expressions, 2-42
macro evaluation algorithm, 2-62
operators, 2-39
options summary, 2-5
string comparisons, 2-42
mpp51 options
-?, 2-6
--allow-undefined-macro, 2-7
--disable, 2-9
--file-info, 2-12
--info-messages, 2-14
--max-nesting, 2-15
--no-allow-undefined-macro, 2-7
--no-file-info, 2-12
--no-info-messages, 2-14
--no-parameters-redefine, 2-16
--no-skip-asm-comment, 2-19
--no-warn-on-undefined-macro, 2-22
--parameters-redefine, 2-16
--prompt, 2-17
--skip-asm-comment, 2-19
--warn-on-undefined-macro, 2-22
-D, 2-8
-f, 2-10
-I, 2–13
-o, 2–18
-U, 2–20
-V, 2–21
multipass, link51 control, 9–54
multiplication, 6–12

N
name
   assembler directive, 7–23
   link51 control, 9–55
name records, A–7
naming convention
   link51, 9–4
   overlayable segments, 9–46
nes function, 2–42
nocase
   asm51 control, 5–8
   link51 control, 9–34
nocheck, link51 control, 9–35
nodebug, asm51 control, 5–10
nodebuglines, link51 control, 9–41
nodebugpublics, link51 control, 9–42
nodebugsymbols, link51 control, 9–43
noerrorprint, asm51 control, 5–13
noexternalmemory, asm51 control, 5–21
nogen, 5–14
nolines, link51 control, 9–52
nolist, asm51 control, 5–16
nolistall, asm51 control, 5–17
nomacro, 5–18
nomap, link51 control, 9–53
nomod51, asm51 control, 5–20
noobject, asm51 control, 5–22
nooptimize, asm51 control, 5–23
nooverlay, link51 control, 9–56
nopaging, asm51 control, 5–26
noprint
   asm51 control, 5–27
   link51 control, 9–62
nopublics, link51 control, 9–63
noregaddr, asm51 control, 5–28
noregisterbank, asm51 control, 5–29
normal mode, 2–60
nosymbols, 5–32
   link51 control, 9–69
not equal operator, 6–12
noxref, 5–35
number, 6–3, 6–8
   binary, 6–8
   decimal, 6–8
   hexadecimal, 6–8
   octal, 6–8

O
object, asm51 control, 5–22
object file, 3–4
object format, 9–82
   OMF51, 9–80
OMF51
   backward referencing libraries, 9–81
   case sensitivity, 9–80
   linking objects and libraries, 9–80
   object format, 9–80
omf51, 1–3, 10–15
operands, 6–3
operators, 6–10
   mpp51, 2–39
   precedence list, 6–10
optimize, asm51 control, 5–23
option function, 2–54
options
   assembler, 3–4
   linker, 9–8
options summary
   assembler, 3–4
   linker, 9–8
   mpp51, 2–5
org, 7–24
out function, 2–55
output, link51, 9–73
output file, 2–18, 9–20
  linker, 9–6
overlay, link51 control, 9–56
overlay attribute, 7–28
overview, 1–1

P
page alignment, 7–27
pagelength, asm51 control, 5–24
pagewidth
  asm51 control, 5–25
  link51 control, 9–59
paging, asm51 control, 5–26
parameterless macros, 2–25
parameters, 2–29
parentheses, 6–7
PATH, 10–32
plus operator, 6–11
precede
  locate control, 9–27
  locating control, 9–60
predefined symbols, 6–16
preprocessing, 1–7
print
  asm51 control, 5–27
  link51 control, 9–62
program, 9–5
program development, 1–3
public, assembler directive, 7–25
publics, link51 control, 9–63

S
save, asm51 control, 5–30
section base and page specification
  records, A–10
section fillers, A–6
section headers, A–6
segment, 9–4
  assembler directive, 7–27
  naming convention, 9–46
segment overlay, 7–28
segment range specification records,
  A–9
segment type, 6–3
  expressions, 6–15
segments and memory allocation, 3–9
select bank operator, 6–14
select high operator, 6–14
select low operator, 6–14
selection operators, 6–14
set, assembler directive, 7–29
set function, 2–40
shift left operator, 6–14
shift operators, 6–14
shift right operator, 6–14

R
RAM, 6–5
ramsize, link51 control, 9–64
recursion, 2–26
regaddr, asm51 control, 5–28
registerbank, asm51 control, 5–29
relational operators, 6–12
relocation records, A–7
relocation type
  bitaddressable, 7–27
  common, 7–27
  inblock, 7–28
  inpage, 7–27
  page, 7–27
  romdata, 7–28
  short, 7–28
  unit, 7–28
repeat function, 2–48
reserve, link51 control, 9–65
reserve memory, 9–65
restore, asm51 control, 5–30
ROM size, 5–31
romdata, 7–28
rseg, 7–26
short attribute, 7–28, 7–32
sign operators, 6–11
smallrom, asm51 control, 5–31
special function registers, 3–6
srec51, 1–3, 10–18
stack
  locate control, 9–27
  locating control, 9–67
statement, 4–3
string, 6–8
string comparisons, mpp51, 2–42
string manipulation functions, 2–50
stub routine, 9–74
substr function, 2–51
symbol, 6–9
symbol records. See name records
symbols, 5–32
  link51 control, 9–69
  predefined, 6–16
syntax of an expression, 6–7

T
temporary files, 1–6
  setting directory, 1–5
then, 2–44
title, asm51 control, 5–33
TMPDIR, 1–6
to, link51 control, 9–70
toolchain, 1–3

U
unary operator, 6–10
undef function, 2–41
unit relocation attribute, 7–28
using, assembler directive, 7–30
utilities, 10–1
  ar51, 10–4
dmp51, 10–7
flash tools, 10–9
flashphytec, 10–9
flashsilabs51, 10–9
flashwinbond, 10–9
ieee51, 10–11
ihex51, 10–12
mk51, 10–21
omf51, 10–15
srec51, 10–18

V
version information, 2–21, 3–8, 9–21

W
while function, 2–47
workfiles, 5–34

X
xdata, 7–31
  locate control, 9–27
  locating control, 9–71
xdata address space, 6–3, 7–27
xfw51, 1–3
xpage, link51 control, 9–72
xref, 5–35
xseg, 7–32